



*Бібліотека
студента-медика
Medical Student's
Library*

The LATIN LANGUAGE and Bases of Medical Terminology



ОДЕСЬКИЙ
МЕДУНІВЕРСИТЕТ

ОДЕСЬКИЙ ДЕРЖАВНИЙ
МЕДИЧНИЙ УНІВЕРСИТЕТ

THE ODESSA STATE
MEDICAL UNIVERSITY



*Бібліотека
студента-медика*
*Medical
Student's Library*

*Започатковано 1999 р. на честь 100-річчя
Одеського державного медичного університету
(1900–2000 рр.)*

*Initiated in 1999 to mark the Centenary
of the Odessa State Medical University
(1900–2000)*



THE LATIN LANGUAGE AND BASES OF MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

Practical course

*Recommended
by the Central Methodical Committee
for Higher Medical Education of the
Ministry of Health of Ukraine as a manual
for students of higher medical educational establishments
of the IV level of accreditation using English*



Odessa
The Odessa State Medical University
2008

BBC 81.461я73
UDC 811.124(075.8)61:001.4

Authors: G. G. Yeryomkina, T. F. Skuratova,
N. S. Ivashchuk, Yu. O. Kravtsova

Reviewers: V. K. Zernova, doctor of philological sciences,
professor of the Foreign Languages Department of
the Ukrainian Medical Stomatological Academy

L. M. Kim, candidate of philological sciences, assistant
professor, the head of the Department of Foreign
Languages, Latin Language and Bases of Medical
Terminology of the Vinnitsa State Medical
University named after M. I. Pyrogov

The manual is composed according to the curriculum of the Latin language and bases of medical terminology for medical higher schools. Designed to study the bases of general medical and clinical terminology, it contains training exercises for the class-work, control questions and exercises for individual student's work and the Latin-English and English-Latin vocabularies (over 2,600 terms).

For the use of English speaking students of the first year of study at higher medical schools of IV accreditation level.

*Рекомендовано Центральним методичним кабінетом
з вищої медичної освіти МОЗ України як навчальний посібник
для студентів вищих медичних навчальних закладів IV рівня акредитації,
які опановують навчальну дисципліну англійською мовою
(Протокол № 3 від 15.06.2006 р.)*

ISBN 978-966-7733-47-6 (серія)
ISBN 978-966-443-008-8

© Г. Г. Єрьомкіна, Т. Ф. Скуратова,
Н. С. Івашук, Ю. О. Кравцова, 2008

© Одеський державний
медичний університет, 2008

PREFACE

The manual is created according to the curriculum of the Latin language and bases of medical terminology for the medical institutions. The course of the Latin language is directed at studying the bases of terminology of general medical and clinical subjects, because the term occupies a special place at all stages of the medical education. Terminological orientation of the studying process determined the grammar and lexical material selection.

The manual presents the data on anatomical-histological, clinical and pharmaceutical terminology.

The manual includes training exercises both for class work and students' self-training, control questions, obligatory vocabulary and popular expressions, examples for summing up exercises as well as Latin-English and English-Latin vocabularies.

Introduction

The Latin language as a professional language of a doctor. The term. The scientific notion _____

To work successfully in any sphere of science a specialist should know and use correctly the special vocabulary or terminology. The main function of the term (Lat. *terminus* — boundary sign, borderline) is to express a scientific notion exactly and with one meaning. The term may be expressed both by one word (an organism, a gene, appendicitis and electrocardiogram) and by word combinations (the thoracic cavity, the occipital bone). In contrast to everyday words of the literary language which express ordinary notions the terms express scientific and technical notions. The scientific notion is a result of theoretical generalization, reflection of definite scientific theory and scientific system of knowledge.

Definition. The scientific notion always has a definition (Lat. *definitio*). The definition gives some significant signs of the scientific notion. In the special encyclopaedic dictionaries there are definitions of the terms. For example, “Pneumonia — is an inflammatory process in the lung tissues occurring as an independent disease or as a manifestation or complication of some diseases”.

To know the essence of the scientific notion is to be able to connect this notion (the term) with others, to give it a definite place in the system of notions (the terms).

Terminology. The system of terms. The terminology of a definite field of knowledge or science is a system of names, words and word combinations used to express scientific notions in the system of notions in the definite connections and relations with each other.

Terminology is in constant development, something is changed, added, out of use, eliminated. Many well-known special words get new scientific meaning. Terminology is a significant part of the language of science and scientific literature.

Having obtained the doctor’s diploma the young specialist becomes master of the professional language of the doctor. The professional language is a synthesis of many separate sublanguages mastered by the student at special

departments. The way to achieve this language synthesis is long and difficult. One of the serious objective difficulties is specific peculiarities of the professional language of the doctors.

First of all there are a large number of words of Greek and Latin origin which is characteristic of the professional language of doctors in any country of the world despite their national language. The professional language of doctors includes traditionally used specific expressions in Latin.

Combinations of special names in Latin called nomenclatures have official international authority. They are anatomical, histological, microbiological and other nomenclatures.

Why does the Latin language which is considered to be the “dead language” along with the “dead” ancient Greek language still influence the development of the scientific languages of medicine and biology? To answer this question you should get acquainted with the history of the Latin language and its role in the development of medicine.

History of the Latin language

The Latin language (*Lingua Latina*) belongs to the Italian group of Indo-European languages. It originated in ancient times. First it was spoken by Latini — a tribe living in the centre of Italy as well as inhabitants of Ancient Rome and the tribes of the Apennine peninsular which had been conquered by Rome by the beginning of I A.D.

Since the middle of III B.C. the Latin language together with Roman legionaries penetrates into the countries with more ancient culture — Greece, Egypt, Syria and others as well as countries with undeveloped culture. Latin becomes the dominating language of the huge Roman Empire occupying the territory from modern Romania to modern Portugal.

Latin was spreading rather quickly on the West but in Greece, Asia Minor, Egypt the Latin language met languages reflecting higher level of culture than Latin. A significant role was played by the Greek culture. The Romans were under the influence of highly developed culture of Greece from the very beginning of their contacts with Greeks.

In V B.C. the Greek science developed rapidly and successfully, including natural history and medicine. It is at that time that Hippocrates, the “father” of scientific European medicine, lived and worked in Greece. The sources of scientific medical terminology were found in his works. Most of the terms used by Hippocrates are in the international dictionary of medicine.

The largest contribution to the formation of medical terminology after Hippocrates was made by the representatives of the so-called medical school of Alexandria (IV B.C.) — Gerophil, Erasistrate, later Ruf of Efes and

especially encyclopedically educated scientist, philosopher, anatomist and pharmacist Claudius Galen. C. Galen along with Hippocrates laid the foundation of the future medical scientific terminology.

Medical knowledge of Greece penetrated into the Latin language and some time later a lot of Greek words in latinized or unchanged original form appeared in Latin (aër — air, machina — machine, historia — history, diaphragma — diaphragm). The Latin alphabet was increased due to introduction of the Greek letters “y” and “z”.

The role of the Latin language increased. The works of the Roman scientists and doctors appeared. Cornelius Celcius (I B.C.) created some sort of encyclopaedia. One of his books entitled “About medicine” (“De medicina”) contained a lot of words of Greek origin. Greek and Latin terms were used as synonyms and doctors in ancient times had to know two languages: Greek and Latin.

The terminology was formed on bilingual base. This bilinguism became a traditional development of medical terminology and this process is continued nowadays. It is reflected in the terms of different nomenclatures: the same anatomical formations are named in Latin in anatomical nomenclature and in Greek in disease nomenclature, for example, Lat. *ren* = Gr. *nephros* = nephritis-inflammation of kidneys. After the fall of the Roman Empire the conversational Latin loses its official role. The language divergence between old Roman provinces increases. And IX century is marked by rise of Roman languages (Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, French and others). At that time the literary Latin language continued its artificial existence as bookish, “scientific” language for centuries.

In the Middle Ages it was the so-called Medieval Latin, and in Renaissance — the so-called — humanistic Latin. All scientific works and teachings were in Latin. The works of Old Greek and Arab doctors were translated into Latin. Then world famous “The Canon of Medical Science” by Ibn-Sina or Avitsenna (980–1037) was translated into Latin in XII century and was the main guide of teaching medicine in Europe almost up to the end of the XVI century.

In Renaissance the Latin language became the international language of science, all scientists in all spheres of knowledge exchanged verbal and written information in Latin. It is in this epoch that the bases of international medical terminology in Latin were laid.

The greatest Italian anatomist, the creator of scientific human anatomy Andreas Vesalius (1514–1564) taught anatomy and wrote his classic work “De humani corporis fabrica” (“About the structure of the human body”) in Latin. He did his best to perfect Latin anatomical terminology.

William Harvey (1578–1657) an outstanding English physician who discovered blood circulation, also wrote his treatise “Exercitatio anatomica de motu cordis et sanguinis in animalibus” (“Anatomical investigation about movement of the heart and blood in animals”) in Latin. The prominent philosophers, scientists, physicians used Latin in writing their works.

In Russia the first steps of science were connected with translations of the works in Latin. Epifaniy Slavinetsky is considered to be the translator of the anatomical works of Andreas Vesalius for the students of the first medical school in Russia. Most of works of famous M. V. Lomonosov were also written in Latin.

The first professor in anatomy, academician A. P. Protasov laid the foundation of the anatomical terminology in Russian. Much was done to systematize and introduce scientific terminology by the remarkable Russian physician N. M. Maximovich—Ambodik.

Even in the middle of the XIX century most of medical works in Russia were written in Latin. The classic work of the great Russian surgeon M. I. Pyrogov on operative surgery and topographic anatomy has also been written in Latin. However, by the end of the XIX century Latin was substituted by national languages remaining only a means of international scientific, written and bookish intercourse.

At the same time it retained its function of international means for nomination (Lat. *nomen* — name) to denote objects and concepts in anatomy, histology, microbiology, embryology and partly in pathologic anatomy and clinical subjects as well as in pharmacology.

Word-forming elements (roots, prefixes and suffixes) of the ancient Greek and Latin are still the main construction material for term formation. Most of them are international and used in two, three or more languages with the same meaning.

The fundamentals of medical terminology

Medical terminology is a “system of systems”. It consists of great number of separate terminologic subsystems of medical, medicobiological and some other sciences connected with medicine. We distinguish three leading subsystems using Latin to name their objects and concepts.

1. Anatomical and histological nomenclatures including all names of the known anatomical and histological formations. Modern International Anatomical Nomenclature (Nomina anatomica) named Paris and usually marked by the first three Latin letters PNA was initially established at the VI International Congress of Anatomists in Paris in 1955. Since then it was complemented and corrected more than once. PNA includes more than 5,600

anatomical objects. Histological nomenclature includes over 2,750 terms. At the XI International Congress of Anatomists in Mexico in 1980 both nomenclatures were revised and complemented.

2. Clinical nomenclature (Gr. *klinike techne* — the art of treatment, *nursing bed* — patients). It includes terms expressing different clinical specialities as well as pathologic anatomy and pathologic physiology, i.e. specialities dealing with pathos (Gr. — disease, suffering. First of all, these are the terms of therapy (Gr. *therapeia* — care, treatment), and surgery (Gr. *cheir* — hand + *ergon* — work, action), the names of diseases, pathologic processes and conditions, signs of diseases, symptoms (Gr. *symptoma* — sign) and syndromes (Gr. *syndrome* — a combination of signs), the names of operations, methods of examination and treatment, medical devices and instruments, etc. The clinical terminology is characterized by the so-called *termini technici*, i.e. special Latin terms which are not translated, as a rule, for example, *status praesens*, *in vivo*, *in vitro*, *in situ*, etc.

3. Pharmaceutic terminology. These are names of medicinal preparations of vegetable and chemical origin. Their word-forming structure reflects to some extent the information of composition, origin and the way of obtaining them.

The significance of the Latin language

Though the course of studies of the Latin language has a professional aim, i.e. to prepare doctors efficient in terminology, you have a wonderful opportunity to widen your outlook, to increase your cultural level. In this respect Latin aphorisms are very useful. They express generalized, completed thought in a laconic form.

Fortes fortuna adjuvat — Destiny helps the brave

Regredi non est progredi — To go backward is not to go forward

There are a lot of very interesting proverbs which are used given without translation as they are well-known among educated people.

They are widely used in science and belles-letters, in public speech. *E.g.*, *Omnia mea mecum porto* — All my things I carry with me. *Festina lente* — Hurry but slowly.

A lot of aphorisms are quotations of famous antique writers, philosophers and political leaders.

The international vocabulary, especially the European one, comprises latinisms of different meanings. Everyone knows and uses such words as

communication, credit, course, grade, ingredient, aggression, congress, colleague, monument, stature and many others.

Some popular expressions are given below:

Salus populi suprema lex — Welfare of people is the highest law

Salus aegroti suprema lex medicorum — Welfare of a patient is the highest law for doctors

Medice cura aegrotum sed non morbum — Doctor, treat a patient but not an illness

Nemo solus satis — Nobody alone can be intelligent enough

Pax optima rerum — Peace is the most valuable thing

Quod erat demonstrandum — Which was to be proved

Similia similibus curantur — Similar is cured by similar

Tempora mutantur, et nos mutamur in illis — Time changes and we change with it

Usus est optimus magister — Practice is the best teacher

Disce sed a doctis, indoctos ipse doceto — Study from the learned, teach the unlearned

Otium post negotium — Rest after work

Vivitur ingenio, caetera — Only mind (talent) lives, all others disappear

Ne cede malis — Don't surrender before troubles

Memento patriam — Remember Motherland

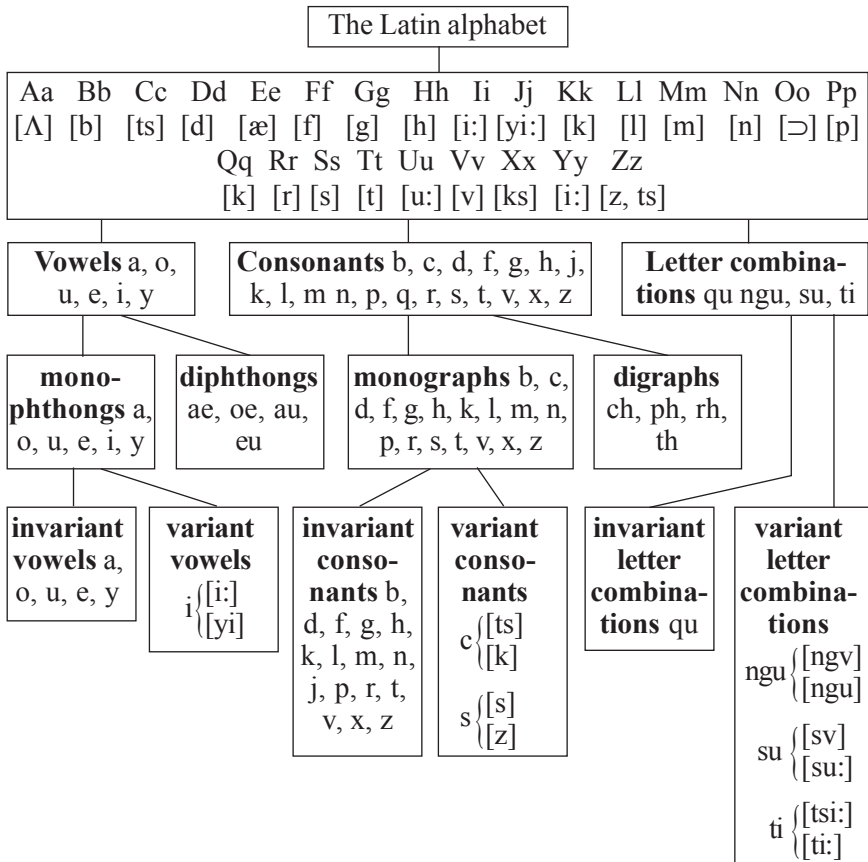
Te hominem esse memento — Remember that you are a man

In conclusion we may say: “**Ad opus!** — Get down to business!” and “**Respice finem!** — And mind the final aim!”

Lesson 1

The Latin Alphabet. Phonetics. Pronunciation of vowels. Pronunciation of diphthongs and consonants. Pronunciation of letter combinations

- Aim:** 1) *To remember* the outlines and names of the letters of the Latin alphabet
 2) *To be able to* pronounce sounds which are marked by these letters



§ 1. Sounds classification

The Latin alphabet which is used in modern medical terminology consists of 25 letters. The letters a, o, u, e, i, y mark the vowels. The letters b, d, f, g, h, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z mark the consonants.

The vowels are divided into one-vowel sound (monophthongs) and two vowel sound (diphthongs).

§ 2. Pronunciation of the vowels

The vowel “a” is pronounced as [ʌ] *apex* — top.

The vowel “o” is pronounced as [ɔ] *foramen* — opening.

The vowel “u” is pronounced as [u:] *bursa* — bag.

The vowel “e” is pronounced hard as [e] in English in words with the closed syllable. *E.g., pes* — foot, *ego* — I.

Before the sound “e” all consonants are always pronounced hard (they are not palatalized): *femur* — thigh, *superior* — upper.

The letter “i” is used to present both sounds. In the first case it is pronounced as English “i” in words with the closed syllable (*pill, pit*) — *inferior* — lower, *medicina* — medicine. In the second case it is pronounced as [yi]. As a consonant “i” is met mainly in the middle of the word between two vowels: *maior* — major or at the beginning of the syllables before the vowel: *iecur* — liver, *iniectio* — injection. In similar combinations this sound is usually pronounced together with the following vowel, palatalizing it. *E.g., iugularis* — jugular, *adiuvans* — auxiliary, *iunctura* — juncture.

In modern medical terminology we may use “j” instead of “i”: *maior* — major, *maialis* — majalis. The letter “j” is not written only in the loanwords from Greek — *iodum* — iodine, *iatria* — doctoring.

The letter “y” came from the Greek alphabet and is met only in the loanwords from Greek; it’s pronounced as [i], *e.g., tympanum* — drum, *gyrus* — winding. Combination of two different vowels is one syllable pronounced as one sound or one syllable and is called a diphthong. In Latin there are four diphthongs: ae, oe, au, eu.

The diphthong “ae” is pronounced as the English sound [e]: *diaeta* — diet, *aeger* — a patient.

The diphthong “oe” is pronounced as the English sound [ø:]: *oedema* — edema, *oesophagus* — gullet.

The diphthong “au” is pronounced as [au] with brief [u]: *aurum* — gold, *trauma* — injury.

The diphthong “eu” is pronounced as [eu] with brief [u]: *pneumonia* — pneumonia, *pleura* — pleura.

Some vowels happen to stand next to each other, but they don't form the diphthong and should be pronounced separately; in this case two points are put over the second vowel: *aër* — air, *dyspnoë* — breathlessness.

§ 3. Peculiarities of pronunciation of the consonants

The consonant “B, b” is pronounced as the English [b]: *brevis* — short, *vertebralis* — vertebral.

The consonant “c” is pronounced in two ways, as [ts] and as [k]. It depends on the sound it stands before. If “c” stands before e, i, y, two diphthongs (ae, oe), then it is pronounced as [ts], *cella* — cell, *cerebellum* — cerebellum, *cibus* — food, *officina* — chemist's, *cytus* — cell, *cylindrus* — cylinder, *coeliacus* — abdominal. But if “c” stands before the vowels a, o, u, consonants or at the end of the word, then it is pronounced as [k]: *caries* — caries, *costa* — rib, *medicus* — doctor, *pancreas* — pancreas, *coccygeus* — coccygeal, *lac* — milk.

To reproduce the sound “k” there are two more letters “q” and “k” in the Latin alphabet. “K” is used extremely rare as the sound. “K” is usually marked by the letter “c”. In medical Latin the letter “k” is written:

a) in some words of the Greek origin when it is necessary to avoid changing of the sound [k] into [ts] before soft vowels, for example, *keratoma* — a horn formation, *kyphosis* — curvature of the spine.

b) in loan-words from the Arab or other languages: *Kalium* — potassium. The consonant “G, g” is pronounced as the English sound [g] — *glandula* — gland.

The consonant “H, h” is pronounced with aspiration as the English [h] — in the word “head”, *hiatus* — slit, *habitus* — appearance.

The consonant “L, l” is pronounced softly in any syllable of the word in contrast to the English one: *labium* — lip, *felleus* — bilious, *fel* — bile.

The letter “S, s” is pronounced as the English [s]: *sulcus* — furrow, *fossa* — pit, *osseus* — bony. But if “s” stands between two vowels or between a vowel and one of the consonants “m” or “n”, it is pronounced with voice as [z]: *incisura* — notch, *nasus* — nose, *organismus* — organism, *extensor* — extensor.

The letter combination “su” is pronounced as [sv] in the words *suavis* — pleasant, *consuetudo* — custom and [su] in other words: *suus* — oneself.

“T, t” is pronounced as the English [t], but the syllable “ti” before the following vowel is pronounced as [tsi]: *substantia* — substance, *articulatio* — joint.

N.B. If the consonants “s” or “x” stand before the letter combination “ti”, it is pronounced as [ti]: *ostium* — entrance, opening, *mixtio* — mixture.

“X” — marks a double consonant sound [ks]: *radix* — root, *lex* — law.

“Z, z” was loaned from the Greek alphabet and is met as “z”; in the words of Greek origin. “Z” is pronounced as [z] or [dz], that is a double consonant sound: *zona* — a zone (both variants of pronunciation are possible: [zona] and [dzona]). The letter “z” is read as [ts] in the words of non-Greek origin — *zincum* — zinc.

§ 4. The pronunciation of letter combinations

“Q, q” is always used in combination with “u” and is pronounced as [kv]: *aqua* — water, *quatum* — how much, *quadriiceps* — four-headed.

The letter combination “ngu” is pronounced in two ways: before vowels — [ngv], before consonants — [ngu], *lingua* — language, *sanguis* — blood, *angulus* — angle.

§ 5. The pronunciation of digraphs

The words loaned from the Greek language (and in some Latin words) have letter combinations ch, ph, th, rh. They are used mainly to reproduce the Greek aspirated sounds. These letter combinations are pronounced in the following way:

ch [h] — *charta* — paper

ph [f] — *phalanx* — phalanx

th [t] — *thorax* — thorax

rh [r] — *rheumatismus* — rheumatism

The letter combination “sch” is pronounced as [sh]: *ischiadicus* — ischiatic, *schizophrenia* — a mental disease.

§ 6. Self-control

I. Use the table “The Latin alphabet” and answer the following questions:

- 1) How many letters are there in the Latin alphabet?
- 2) What vowels are considered to be monophthongs?
- 3) What is a diphthong?
- 4) Name the invariant and variant vowels (consonants).
- 5) Name the digraphs and variant letter combinations.

II. Fill in the blanks:

- 1) The sound [e] is marked in Latin by the vowel “e” and diphthongs ...

2) To mark the sound [yi] at the beginning of the word or the syllable before the vowel we use the letter “i” or

3) The sound [k] is the most often marked by the letter

4) The sound [f] is marked by the letter “f” or digraph

5) The sound [i] is marked by the letter “i”, but in the words of Greek origin by

6) The letter combination “ti” is pronounced as [...] in the word abductio.

7) The letter combination “ti” after the consonants “s” and “x” is always read as [...].

8) The combination of sounds [kv] is always marked by the letters

9) “C” as [ts] is pronounced only before

10) “C” as [k] is pronounced before

11) “S” between vowels is pronounced as [...].

12) “S” between the vowel and the consonants “m, n” is pronounced as [...].

13) The combination “qu” plus a vowel is pronounced as [...].

14) The combination “ngu” plus a vowel is pronounced as [...].

15) What is the origin of the words: pyramis, phalanx, thorax, cystis, myologia.

§ 7. Exercises for reading

1. *Read aloud, taking into consideration the hard pronunciation of consonants before “e”:*

Nervus — nerve, dens — tooth, febris — fever, teres — round, bene — well, genu — knee, foramen — opening, tendo — tendon, littera — letter, meatus — passage, semen — seed, fovea — pit, abdomen — abdomen.

2. *Explain the pronunciation of the sound [i]:*

Vitaminum — vitamin, finis — end, bilis — bile, nitris — nitrite, insanabilis — incurable, impressio — impression, infans — infant, inter — between, jugum — eminence, jus — right, jusjurandum — oath, juvenis — young, jugularis — jugular, injuria — injustice, initium — beginning, iecur — liver, junctura — joint, major — major, majus — major.

3. *Read aloud, paying attention to the pronunciation of the sound [y] in words of Greek origin:*

Amygdala — almonds, hydrargirum — mercury, myopia — short-sightedness, hypotonia — low blood pressure, hypertensio — high blood pressure, pyelitis — inflammation of the renal pelvis, myologia — science about muscles, synostosis — bone connection, dystrophia — disturbance of nutrition, dysostosis — disturbance of bone formation.

4. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of diphthongs as one sound:

Ala — wing, alae — wings, vertebra — vertebra, vertebrae — vertebrae, aegrotus — patient, praecordium — precordial, praesens — present, gangraena — gangrene, anaemia — anemia, paediatr — pediatrician, amoeba — amoeba, poena — punishment, coena — dinner, oesophagus — esophagus, coelia — abdominal cavity, foetus — fetus, auctor — author, auditus — hearing, auris — ear, auditorium — auditorium, aura — aura, auscultatio — auscultation, nausea — sickness, fauces — pharynx, leukaemia — leukemia, aneurysma — dilation of the artery, neuritis — inflammation of nerve, pneumonia — pneumonia, neurosis — neurosis.

5. Read aloud. Note that the combinations of vowels do not compose a diphthong in the following words:

Aër — air, aloë — aloe (medicinal plant), dyspnoë — breathlessness, uropoëticus — producing urine, diploë — spongy substance, eupnoë — correct breathing.

6. Read and explain the pronunciation of the sound [c] in the following words:

Carbo — coal, canalis — canal, capitulum — small head, collum — neck, condylus — fist, cavum cranii — cranial cavity, corona — crown, coracoideus — coracoid, cutis — skin, ulcus — ulcer, oculus — eye, coccus — coccus, criticus — decisive, sulcus — furrow, curatio — treatment, cura — cure, curriculum vitae — biography, cella — cell, acetabulum — cotyloid cavity, cerebrum — brain, processus — process, facies — surface, cervix — neck, sceleton — skeleton, cera — wax, centrum — centre, cito — quickly, cilium — eyelash, cibus — food, cinereus — gray, cingulum — belt, circum — round, cyclus — cycle, cystis — bladder, cytus — cell, cylindrus — cylinder, caecus — caecum.

7. Read. Don't forget that the Latin "h" is pronounced with aspiration as the English one:

Hippocrates — Hippocrates, hygiēna — hygiene, hepar — liver, hallux — great toe, hiatus — slit, homo — person, hypnosis — hypnosis, hypochondrium — hypochondrium, hypoglossus — under the tongue, hypophysis — pituitary body, os hyoideum — sublingual bone.

8. Read the words. Remember that the Latin "l" sounds softly:

Linea — line, lobus — lobe, plexus — plexus, ligamentum — ligament, glandula lacrimalis — lacrimal gland, medulla — bone marrow, medulla

spinalis — spinal cord, patella — patella, maxilla — upper jaw, cellula — small cell, sal — salt, fel — bile.

9. Read and explain in what cases “s” sounds as the English [s] and in what cases as [z]:

Os — bone, osteologia — science about bones, ossa — bones, fissura — slit, abscessus — abscess, sutura spuria — false suture, basalis — basal, usus — use, tuberositas — tuberositas, spongiosus — spongy, pars petrosa — stony part, dosis — dose, mucosa — mucous membrane, musculosus — muscular, status praesens — present state, cavernosus — cavernous, cataplasma — cataplasm, systema — system, somnus — sleep.

10. Read and explain the pronunciation of double Latin consonants “x” and “z”:

Apex — top, radix — root, axis — axis, proximales — proximal, closest to the trunk, appendix — appendix, plexus — plexus, salpinx — tube, sextus — sixth, exemplar — example, zoster — belt, zoon — animal, zincum oxydum — zinc oxide, zoologia — science about animals.

11. Read, pay attention to the pronunciation of the syllable “ti”:

Tibia — tibia, titulus — title, tinctura — tincture, timor — fear;
— “ti” before the vowel: substantia — substance, dissectio — dissection, protuberantia — protuberance, eminentia — eminence, spatium — space, vitium cordis — cardiac failure, auscultatio — auscultation, dens sapientis — wisdom tooth;

— “ti” after “s” and “x”: digestio — digestion, combustio — burn, mixtio — mixture, bestia — beast.

12. Read aloud. Note how the letter combination “ngu” is pronounced before vowels:

Sanguis — blood, anguis — snake, lingua — language, tongue, sublingualis — sublingual, unguentum — ointment, subungualis — subungual, vas sanguiferum — blood vessel.

13. Read and pay attention to the pronunciation of “qu” before the vowel:

Squamosus — squamous, liquor — liquor, quercus — oak, triquetrus — triquetral, antiquus — antique, quantum satis — the quantity you need, quadriceps — quadriceps.

14. Read, paying attention to the pronunciation of digraphs ch, ph, th, rh in latinized Greek words:

Cochlea — cochlea, trochlea — block, trachea — trachea, bronchus — bronchus, brachium — shoulder, chylus — lymph, chiasma — chiasm; chirurgus — surgeon, ductus — duct, choledochus — bile duct, lymphati-

cus — lymphoid, physiologia — physiology, encephalon — brain, interphalangeus — interphalangeal, typhus exanthematicus — classical typhus, therapia — treatment, ethmoidalis — cribrate, thoracalis — thoracic, pathologia — science about diseases, thyreoideus — thyroid, rhombus — rhomb, rheumatismus — rheumatism, rhachitis — rickets, rhinitis — rhinitis.

§ 8. Exercise to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved

Read and check up whether you are able to pronounce correctly the Latin sounds. Pay attention to the peculiarities of pronunciation of the letters “e, i, y, c, h, l, s”, letter combinations and digraphs. If there are any difficulties, read the rules of pronunciation once more.

Polynuclearis — polynuclear, sectio caesarea — cesarean section, appendix — vermiform process of the caecum, botulismus — food poisoning, naevus — birth-mark, psychosis — mental disease, thalamus — optical tubercle, systole — contraction, interosseus — interosseal, trochanter — trochanter, aorta ascendens — ascending aorta, nephritis — inflammation of the kidneys, os hyoideum — sublingual bone, fovea — pit, globulus — small ball, subaciditas — decreased acidity, triplex — triple, reconvalescentia — recovery, reconvalescence, valvula — valve, bilateralis — bilateral, pneumaticus — airy, inhalatio — inhalation, mesenterium — mesentery, avirulentus — avirulent, propaedeutica — introduction into science, punctio — puncture, remedia antipyretica — antipyretic remedy, urolithiasis — urolithic disease, sphenoidalis — sphenoidal, incisio — incision, embryo — embryo, pinguis — fatty, multiplex — multiple, iecur — liver, costae fluctuantes — fluctuating ribs, xerosis — dryness of the skin, ulcus ventriculi — gastric ulcer, pulsus frequens — frequent pulse, hypogastrium — the epigastrium, membrana arachnoidea — arachnoidal membrane, junctura — juncture, pityroideus — branny, noxius — harmful, syndromum — sign of the disease, aequalis — equal, spatium — space, lobulus — small lobe, paediatr — children’s doctor, hydrops — edema, ganglion — nervous knot, vesica fellea — gallbladder, exanthema — rash, remedia spasmolytica — spasmolytic drug.

§ 9. Vocabulary

Nouns

homo — human
skeleton — skeleton
caput — head

capitulum — small head
cranium — skull
cerebrum — brain

columna — column
collum — neck
nucha — back of the head
corpus — body
vertebra — vertebra
atlas — 1-st cervical vertebra
axis — 2-nd cervical vertebra
truncus — trunk
dorsum — back
lamina — platelet
cavum — cavity
medulla — bone marrow

substantia — substance
cartilago — cartilage
chondros (Gr.) — cartilage
articulatio — joint
ligamentum — ligament
sutura — suture
capsula — capsule
plica — fold
membrana — membrane
bursa — bag
os — bone
encephalon — brain

Lesson 2

Duration and brevity of the syllable.

The rules of stress

Aim: 1) *To know* the rules of stress

2) *To be able to* read the Latin words making the stressed syllable in pronunciation

Logic structure of the theme

Stress in words

On the second syllable from the end, if it is long:

1. A diphthong: **glutaeus**
2. The vowel of the syllable is before two or more consonants or letters “**x**”, “**z**”: **ligament, labyrinthus**
3. Long suffixes -al, -ar, -at, -os, -ur: **fissura, fibrosus**

On the third syllable from the end, if the second syllable is short:

1. The vowel of the last but one syllable is before the following vowel: **cranium**
2. The vowel of the syllable is before digraphs **ch, ph, rh, th** and combinations of **b, c, d, g, p, t** with letters “**l**”, “**r**”: **palpebra, vertebra**
3. Short suffixes -ul, -ol: **tuberculum, alveola**

§ 10. Tasks for individual work

Read the anatomical terms, explain the pronunciation of the letters “e”, “c”, “ph”, “ngu”:

Substantia spongiosa — spongy substance, substantia compacta — compact substance, medulla ossium — bone marrow, cavitas medullaris —

medullary cavity, *columna vertebralis* — vertebral column, *plicae adiposae* — fatty folds, *capsula articularis* — articular capsule, *plicae synoviales* — synovial folds, *margo linguae* — margin of the tongue, *nervus hypoglossus* — sublingual nerve, *cavitas articularis* — joint cavity, *facies articulares* — articular surfaces, *squama occipitalis* — occipital scale, *incisura jugularis* — jugular notch.

§ 11. Stress

1. In Latin the end of the word is not stressed. The syllables are usually counted from the end of the word, for example, $li^3-ne^2-a^1$.

In double-words the stress is placed on the first syllable: *bursa*, *corpus*, *cavum*.

2. In polysyllabic words the stress is placed on the second or the third syllable from the end. It depends on duration or brevity of the last but one syllable. If the last but one syllable is long (–) the stress is placed on it — *ligamentum*. If it is short (v), the stress is placed on the third syllable from the end — *substantia*.

3. To learn what syllable is long or short, you must memorize the following main rules.

The syllables which consist of diphthongs are always long and stressed — *diaeta*.

The syllable is long when its vowel is followed by two or more consonants — *columna*, *maxilla*.

When the vowel is followed by “x” or “z”, it is considered to be long — *reflexus*.

N.B. When the vowel of the last but one syllable is followed by combinations of **b, c, d, g, p, t** with letters **l, r**, this syllable will be short — *palpebra*, *cerebrum*. Letter combinations **ch, ph, th, rh** are considered to be one sound and do not make the last but one syllable long — *stomachus*.

The main rule of vowel brevity is: a vowel followed by other vowels is always short; the vowel is short before **h** — *linea*, *remedium*, *contraho*.

However, there are words when the rules of duration and brevity do not work. These are words where the vowels of the last but one syllable are followed by only one consonant. In some words this syllable is short, in others — long, therefore it is necessary to look up this word in the dictionary where duration and brevity are marked: *tun[̄]ica* — membrane, *pyl[̄]orus* — pylorus, *orb[̄]ita* — orbit.

Besides, one should bear in mind that suffixes of the nouns **-ura, -itis, -oma** are always long — *fissura, arthritis, fibroma*.

Suffixes **-ul, -ol** are always short — *scapula, alveola*.

Suffixes of the adjectives **-al, -ar, -at, -in, -os** are always long and therefore, stressed: *palatinus* — palatal, *articularis* — articular.

The adjective suffix **-ic** is always short: *gastricus* — gastric.

§12. Self-control

Fill in the blanks:

1. The stress in Latin is placed only on ... and ... syllables.
2. If there is diphthong in the last but one syllable, it is
3. The syllable is long when its vowel stands before
4. The consonants b, d, p, t, c, g in combination with l, r do not make the syllable
5. Conventional signs of duration and brevity are marked in the dictionaries in case when the vowel of the last but one syllable stands before
6. When a vowel is followed by a vowel, it is always
7. The noun suffixes -ur, -it are always
8. The noun suffixes -ul, -ol are always
9. The adjective suffixes -al, -ar, -at, -in, -os are always ... and

§ 13 Exercises

1. What syllable should be stressed in double words?

Fossa — pit, sulcus — furrow, morbus — disease, apex — top, margo — margin, cavum — the cavity, sinus — sinus, septum — septum, corpus — body, sanguis — blood, arcus — arch, tuber — tuber, atlas — the 1-st cervical vertebra.

2. Determine what syllable is long and why:

Pe-ro-nae-us — fibular, glu-tae-us — gluteal, pro-ces-sus — process, pro-fun-dus — profound, hy-po-glos-sus — sublingual, comp-res-sor — compressor, ex-ter-nus — external, di-a-phrag-ma — diaphragm, me-dul-la — bone marrow, ef-fec-tus — effect.

3. Define whether the last but one syllable is long and what syllable is stressed.

Palpebra — eyelid, anhydrus — waterless, muliebris — feminine, quadruple — four times bigger, choledochus — bile duct, monolithus — monolithic.

4. Separate the word into syllables. Explain whether the last but one syllable can be long and place the stress:

Articulatio — joint, linea — line, troclea — block, sentio — feel, teneo — I hold, studeo — I study, arteria — artery, neuralgia — pain in the nerve, aethereus — ethereal, memoria — memory, facies — surface, medius — median, facies symphysis — surface of the joint, manubrium — manubrium, cranium — skull.

5. *Separate the words into syllables according to the mode: ma-sto-i-de-us — mastoid. Define the duration of the last but one syllable and place the stress:*

Sigmoideus — sigmoid, pterygoideus — pterygoid, coracoideus — coracoid, styloideus — styloid, deltoideus — deltoid.

6. *Mark the last but one syllable with duration or brevity sign, place the stress:*

Ileum — ileum, nucleus — nucleus, pancreas — pancreas, balneum — bath, arachnoidea — arachnoidal membrane of the brain, argenteus — silver, olfactus — olfaction, medicamentum — medicine, amorphus — formless, elementum — element, papilla — papilla, metacarpus — metacarpus, dyspnoë — breathlessness, strictura — stricture, apertura — opening, circulus — circle, clavicula — clavicle, malleolus — hammer, foveola — small pit, opticus — visual, frigidus — frigid, interosseus — interosseal, pelvinus — pelvic, palatinus — palatal.

7. *Define what syllable is stressed taking into consideration duration mark:*

Disciplina — subject, science, membrana — membrane, vagina — vagina, tunica — shirt, occiput — back of the head, ventriculus — ventricle, acetabulum — cotyloid cavity, tympanum — drum, palatum — palate, condylus — condyle, somnifer — somnific, tuberositas deltoidea humeri — deltoid eminence of the shoulder, praematurus — premature, abdomen — abdomen, tempora — temples, corpora — bodies, vulnera — wounds, caput — head, homo — human, hominis — of the human, thoracis — of the thorax, cervix — neck, cervicis — of the neck, radix — root, radicis — of the root, poples — kneepan, poplitis — of the kneepan, aegrotus — patient, periodus critica — critical period, organon cavernosum — cavernous organ, sacculus — small sac, littera — letter, proximalis — proximal, distalis — distal, Hippocrates — Hippocrates, oesophagus — esophagus, vacuus — empty, systole — systole, systema — system, systematis — of the system, symphysis — connection, synthesis — synthesis, syndesmosis — connection of bones.

§ 14. Exercise to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved

Read anatomical terms, define duration and brevity of the last but one syllable and place the stress:

Regio epigastrica — epigastric region, regiones abdominales laterales — lumbar regions, palma manus — palm, brachium — arm, dorsum pedis — dorsum of foot, digiti manus — fingers, linea scapularis — scapular line, lamina externa — layer, cavitas medullaris — medullary cavity, medulla ossium flava — yellow bone marrow, articulatio fibrosa — syndesmosis, sutura squamosa — squamous suture.

§ 15. Vocabulary

Nouns

scapula — scapula
clavicula — clavicle
acromion — acromion
tuberculum — tubercle
foramen — opening
femur — femur
pes — foot
dens — tooth
sinus — sinus
costa — rib
fissura — slit, fissure
periosteum — periosteum
maxilla — upper jaw
mandibula — lower jaw
tela — tissue
oculus — eye
stomachus — humerus
ramus — ramus
humerus — shoulder
gyrus — furrow
olecranon — ulnar process
radius — radial bone

Adjectives

longus — long
rectus — straight
profundus — profound
medius — median
parvus — little
multus — multiple
flavus — yellow
obliquus — oblique
transversus — transversal
magnus — large
externus — external
internus — internal
dexter — right
sinister — left
osseus — bony
clavicularis — clavicular
vertebralis — vertebral
occipitalis — occipital
costalis — costal
thoracicus — thoracic

Lesson 3

Introduction into the anatomical terminology. Notion of the term and the terminology. Parts of speech and grammar categories of words constituting a term. Noun. Grammar categories of the noun, dictionary form, general information of declensions and the base. General rules of defining the gender. Uncoordinated attribute. Structural types of the terms _____

Aim: 1) *To know* grammar categories of the noun, signs of five declensions, signs of gender of the nouns with endings -um, -on, -a, -us, -en, -u; lexical minimum of the nouns of five declensions in their dictionary form

2) *To be able to* make out the structure of the anatomical term and define the grammar forms of the words constituting a term; define the declension of the nouns, the base of the nouns of five declensions and their gender; make up the dictionary form of the nouns with endings -um, -on, -a, -us, -u, -en; translate from Latin into English and vice versa the terms with uncoordinated attributes

§ 16. Introduction into the anatomical terminology

Anatomical terminology is one of the subsystems of the medical terminology. The word “term” is of Latin origin and means “limit, border”.

The term is a scientific notion which expresses a complete notion of some object of science exactly and in one meaning.

Terminology (Lat. *terminus* + Gr. *logos* — science) is a system of names, words and word combinations which are used to express scientific notions.

All names of anatomical notions, parts of the body, organs, their parts represented in one list of terms are called anatomical nomenclature.

Modern international anatomical nomenclature in the Latin language named Paris was established at the VI International Congress in Paris in 1955, it is known as Parisian Nomina Anatomica or abbreviated PNA.

PNA was corrected and complemented at the following Congresses.

Anatomical terms may be expressed by different parts of speech. General terms are always expressed by nouns (cavum — cavity, caput — head). Terms expressed by adjectives indicate the position, direction (anterior, lateralis). Size, order of organ position, relation to the organ are expressed by adjectives and numerals (caudalis — caudal, minor — smaller, septimus — the seventh).

§ 17. Noun — Nomen Substantivum. Grammar categories of the noun. Dictionary form

The Latin noun has three genders: masculine — genus masculinum, feminine — genus femininum, neuter — genus neutrum. The noun has two numbers: singular — numerus singularis and plural — numerus pluralis and six cases: casus Nominativus (Nom.) — nominative case; casus Genetivus (Gen.) — genitive case; casus Dativus (Dat.); casus Accusativus (Acc.); casus Abblativus (Abl.). Casus Vocativus (Voc.) is not used in medical terminology. The Latin noun has five declensions which are distinguished by case endings.

Dictionary form. All nouns are written in the dictionary form which consists of three components: 1) the form in Nom. sing.; 2) ending in Gen. sing.; 3) gender (m, f, n).

For example, *vertebra, ae f*. It is expressed by Nom. sing., “ae” — is the ending of this noun in Gen. sing., “f” indicates that the noun *vertebra* is of the feminine gender.

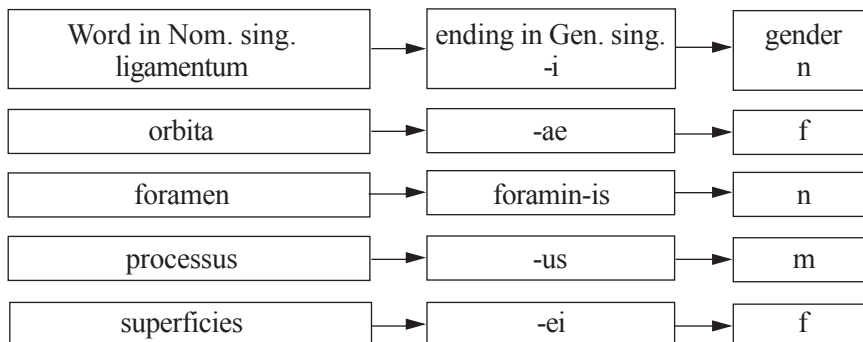
Medicus, i m — physician; *ligamentum, i n* — ligament.

Determination of declension

The declension of the nouns is determined by the ending in Gen. sing.

Decl. I Nom. sing. -costa	→	Gen. sing. -ae cost-ae
Decl. II Nom. sing. -medicus	→	Gen. sing. -i medic-i
Decl. III Nom. sing. -pulmo	→	Gen. sing. -is pulmon-is
Decl. IV Nom. sing. -ductus	→	Gen. sing. -us duct-us
Decl. V Nom. sing. -facies	→	Gen. sing. -ei faci-ei

Determination of dictionary form



§ 18. Exercises

I. Determine the declension of the following nouns:

Encephalon, *i n*; scapula, *ae f*; dens, *dentis m*; corpus, *corporis n*; abdomen, *inis n*; pes, *pedis m*; diaphragma, *atis n*; auris, *is f*; virgo, *virginis f*; clavicula, *ae f*; incisura *ae f*; oculus, *i m*; cranium, *i n*; musculus, *i m*; meatus, *us m*; processus, *us m*.

II. Write the words of the I, II, IV declensions in complete dictionary form, taking into account the declension and gender:

Manus, ... *f (IV)*; pulpa, ... *f (I)*; manubrium, ... *n (II)*; angulus, ... *m (II)*; arcus, ... *m (IV)*; septum, ... *n (II)*; cornu, ... *n (IV)*; bucca, ... *f (I)*; concha, ... *f (I)*; nasus, ... *m (II)*; cerebrum, ... *n (II)*; sinus, ... *m (IV)*; maxilla, ... *f (I)*; genu, ... *n (IV)*.

§ 19. Determination of the base of the nouns of I–V declensions

To change the noun in numbers and cases correctly, to be able to form derivatives, one should learn how to define the base of the word.

The base is a part of the word without any ending. To define it you must throw aside the ending. It is easy to define the base in nouns of I, II, IV, V declensions. For example, *vena* — *ven-* is the base; *sutura* — *sutur-*; *medicus* — *medic-*; *cerebrum* — *cerebr-*; *ductus* — *duct-*; *facies* — *faci-*. But the base of the nouns of III declension does not always coincide with the form of Nom. sing., in most cases it should be defined by Gen. sing. For example:

Nom. sing. — *foramen* — Gen. sing. — *foraminis* — *foramin-*.

Nom. sing. — *corpus* — Gen. sing. — *corporis* — *corpor-*.

In the dictionary form we may find out whether the base coincides with Nom. sing. If it does not coincide, the last part of the base with the ending

of the declension or complete form in Gen. sing. are written after the word in Nom. sing. *For example:* Nom. sing. abdomen, inis *n*; Gen. sing. abdominis — abdomin-; Nom. sing. dens, dentis — dent-; Nom. sing. virgo, inis *f*; Gen. sing. virginis — virgin-; Nom. sing. pes, pedis — ped; Nom. sing. systema, atis *n*; Gen. sing. systematis — systemat-.

One-word nouns are written in complete dictionary form: cor, cordis *n* — heart; os, ossis *n* — bone; pes, pedis *m* — foot; fel, fellis *m* — bile; ren, renis *m* — kidney; pars, partis *f* — part, etc.

N.B. If the dictionary form gives the last part of the base, then the base may be defined only by Gen. sing.; if the end of the base is not indicated, then it may be defined by Nom. sing.

Endings of Nominative and Genitive cases of five Latin declensions

Case	Declension				
	1	2	3	4	5
sing.					
Nom.	f -a	m -us, -er n -um, -on	m, f, n — various	m -us, n -u	f -es
Gen.	-ae	-i	-is	-us	-ei
plur.					
Nom.	-ae	m -i, n -a	m, f -es, n -a (ia)	m -us, n -ua	-es
Gen.	-arum	-orum	-um (ium)	-uum	-erum

§ 20. Self-control

Fill in the blanks:

1. The Latin noun has ... gender and ... numbers.
2. The noun has ... declensions.
3. The noun has ... cases.
4. The dictionary form consists of three components: the form of Nom. sing, ... and
5. In the nouns of I, II, IV, V declensions the base ... with the form of Nom. sing.
6. In majority of the nouns of the III declension the base ... with the form of Nom. sing.; the base is defined by ...
7. In one-word nouns the base of the Nom. and Gen. as a rule

8. In many nouns the base may be determined both by ... and ... case.

9. The dictionary form has the last part of the base when the base in Gen. sing. ... with that in Nom. sing.

10. If the dictionary form has the last part of the base, the whole base may be determined only by ... case.

§ 21. Exercise

Determine the base and define the declension of the following nouns:

Ligamentum, ligamenti *n*; lingua, linguae *f*; sinus, sinus *m*; caput, capitis *n*; venter, ventris *m*; femur, femoris *n*; trauma, traumatism *n*; superficies, superficiei *f*; cavitas, cavitatis *f*; radix, radices *f*; larynx, laryngis *m*; mater, matris *f*; sulcus, sulci *m*; genu, genus *n*; auris, auris *f*; pes, pedis *m*; lien, lienis *m*; pancreas, pancreatis *n*; vas, vasis *n*; basis, basis *f*.

§ 22. General rules of determination of noun gender

Determination of the gender of the nouns which in Nom. sing. have the endings -um, -on, -a, -us, -en, -u.

The indication of the grammar gender of the Latin nouns is the ending in Nom. sing. You should bear in mind that the nouns of the feminine gender are in I, III and V declensions, of masculine and neuter genders are in II, III and IV declensions. You should learn to form the dictionary form of the nouns with the endings in Nom. sing. -um, -on, -a, -us, -en, -u by yourselves, the nouns with these endings are rather often used in such anatomical sections as "Osteologia", "Syndesmologia", "Arthrologia", etc.

N.B. 1. The nouns with the endings in Nom. sing. **-um, -on** are of the neuter gender and have the ending **-i** in Gen. sing., i.e. they are declined by II declension:

Nom.	Gen.	Gender	Declension	Meaning
ligamentum	i	n	II	ligament
acromion	i	n	II	acromion

2. The nouns having the ending **-a** in Nom. sing. are of the feminine gender, they have the ending **-ae** in Gen. sing. and are declined by I declension:

Nom.	Gen.	Gender	Declension	Meaning
vertebra	-ae	f	I	vertebra
forma	-ae	f	I	form

The nouns of the I declension of the **forma** type should be distinguished from the nouns with the ending **-ma** which have the ending **-atis** in Gen. sing. These are nouns of Greek origin, of the neuter gender and they are declined by II declension — *zygoma, atis n* — *zygoma*.

3. The nouns with the ending **-us** in Nom. sing. are of masculine the gender and are declined by II or IV declensions. Most of them are declined by II declension:

Nom.	Gen.	Gender	Declension	Meaning
<i>musculus</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>m</i>	II	muscle
<i>ductus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>m</i>	IV	duct

Besides II and IV declensions, the nouns with the ending **-us** are met in III declension. The indication of the gender of such words is the last part **-ris** in Gen. sing. For example, *corpus, corporis n* — body; *crus, cruris n* — leg, *tempus, temporis n* — temple.

It's better to remember the nouns in Nom. and Gen. sing. with indication of gender.

4. The nouns with the ending **-en** are of the neuter gender.
foramen — *foraminis n* — opening.

Here are some examples of complex terms: *foramen mastoideum, foramen caroticum externum, foramina nutricia* (plur.).

5. The nouns with the ending **-u** are of the neuter gender, they are declined by IV declension: *cornu, us n* — horn; *genu, us n* — knee.

Nom. plur. *cornua, genua*; Gen. plur. *cornuum, genuum*.

§ 23. Control questions

1. How can we define the gender of the noun?
2. What gender are all Latin nouns with the ending **-a**? What is their ending in Gen. sing? Give examples of the terms in their dictionary form.
3. What gender are all nouns with the ending **-um, -on**? Give examples of the terms in their dictionary form.
4. What gender are most of the nouns with the ending **-us**? What declension are they declined by?

5. What endings may the nouns of the masculine gender ending in -us have in Gen. sing.?

6. What endings may the nouns of the neuter gender ending in -us have in Gen. sing.? Give examples of the terms in the dictionary form.

7. What gender are the nouns with the ending -en? How is their base changed? Give examples of complex terms with these nouns.

8. What gender and ending do the nouns ending in -u have in Gen. sing.? What declension are they declined by?

§ 24. Structure of anatomical terms

The structural types of anatomical terms are different. The term expressed by one word (one-word terms) are less in quantity than word-combination terms. But it is not always sufficient to point out a number of significant signs by using one-word term. Not infrequently the anatomical notion is expressed by word-combination term consisting of the noun and the adjective or the noun in Nom. Case and the noun in Gen. Case.

For example: os frontale — frontal bone; os pelvinum — pelvic bone.

Sulcus sinus sagittalis superioris — the sulcus of the upper sagittal sinus. In this term the adjectives “sagittalis” and “superioris” are coordinated with word combination “sulcus sinus”.

N.B.

1. In Latin medical term a **core word** (a defined word) always stands in the first place, it is followed by one or several words which define it and depend on it.

2. There are attributes pertaining not to one word but to the word combination on the whole. These attributes more often denote the size, the position in the anatomical space or the form of the anatomical object (large — small, upper — lower, middle, median, round, oval, external-internal, deep — superficial, right — left, frontal — rear).

Such attributes are most often placed last but they are always coordinated with the core (main) noun which the Latin term begins with.

For example, musculus rectus capitis posterior major — major posterior straight muscle of the head. In this term the adjectives **posterior and major** are coordinated with the word **musculus**.

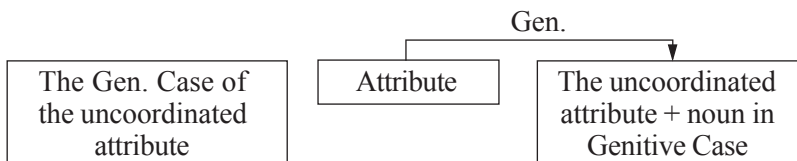
Foramen palatinum majus — a small palatal opening. In this term the adjective **majus** is coordinated with the core word *foramen*.

3. Coordinated attributes are usually expressed by adjectives (or participles), they follow the defined word and are coordinated with it in gender, number and case. For example, costa vera — authentic rib. In this term the word **costa** is of the feminine gender,

therefore the attribute is also of the feminine gender — vera. Foramen rotundum — a round opening. A core word in the neuter **foramen** is in the first place and it is defined by the adjective **rotundum** which is also in the neuter gender.

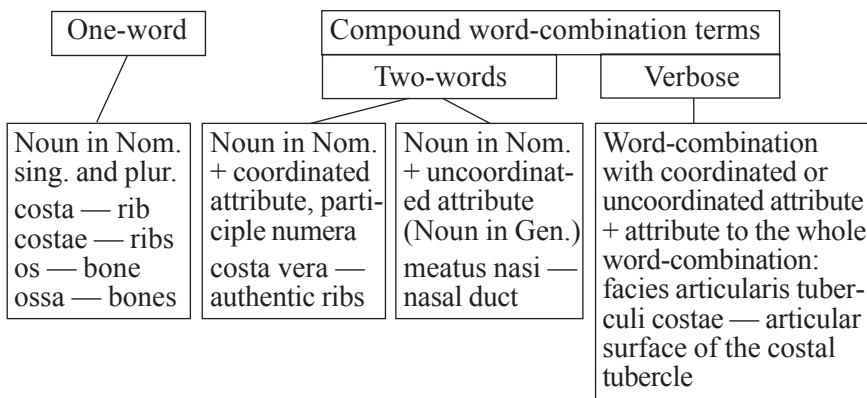
4. The anatomical terms may also be expressed by attributes which are called uncoordinated, i.e. they are not in the same gender number and case with the core word. These attributes are expressed by nouns in Gen. Case. They may be translated into English both as uncoordinated attributes and coordinated ones. For example, tuber maxillae — tuber of the upper jaw. The word **tuber** is a core word and it is expressed by the noun in Nom. Case, sing., the word **maxillae** is an attribute and it is expressed by the noun in Gen. Case, sing. Cavum nasi — nasal cavity or cavity of the nose where cavum is a core word in Nom. Case and nasi is an attribute expressed by the noun in Gen. Case.

Grammar model of coordination



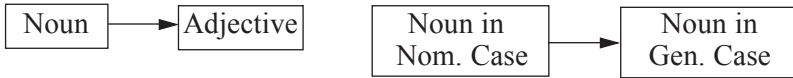
e.g. linea nuchae
septum nasi
basis cranii

§ 25. Structural types of the terms



To understand the anatomical term correctly, to grasp its structure, to remember and form it in Latin by yourself, it's better to use schematic representation of the term.

Models of schemes of anatomical terms



1. *Protuberantia occipitalis externa* — external occipital protuberance. This term is with two coordinated attributes. Its scheme is:

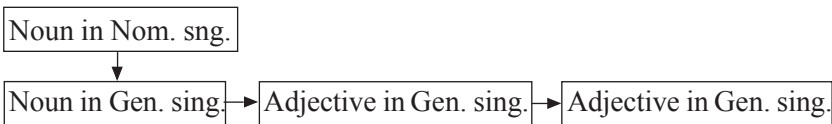
Noun → **Adjective** → **Adjective**

2. *Ligamentum transversum acetabuli* — transverse ligament of the acetabulum.

This term is with one coordinated attribute and one uncoordinated one. Its scheme is:

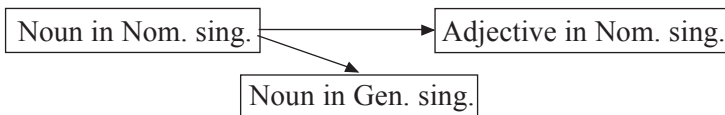


3. *Sulcus sinus petrosi inferioris* — furrow of the inferior petrosal sinus. It's a variant of verbose term. Its scheme is:



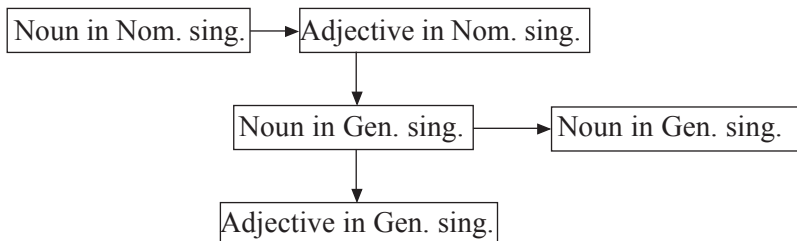
4. *Fossa cranii media* — middle cranial fossa.

The term consists of one coordinated attribute and one uncoordinated one. Its scheme is:



5. *Lamina superficialis fasciae colli propriae* — superficial layer of the cervical fascia proper. It's a variant of verbose term.

Its scheme is:



§ 26. Self-control

Fill in the blanks:

1. The term is a notion
2. The term should express the notion, should be
3. Terminology is a system
4. The anatomical term consists of the core word expressed by ... and the attribute coordinated with it.
5. The attribute may be coordinated and
6. The coordinated attribute is usually expressed by ... and is coordinated with the noun in ... and
7. The coordinated attribute is translated into English as
8. The uncoordinated attribute is expressed only by ... in ... Case.
9. The main noun and its coordinated attribute are expressed by Nom., all other words are in ... Case.
10. The terms may be one-word, ... and

§ 27. Exercises to determine the structure of anatomical terms

Make up the schemes of the following anatomical terms, indicate cases:

- 1) columna vertebralis — vertebral column;
- 2) processus spinosus — spinous process;
- 3) pediculus arcus — pedicle of the arch;
- 4) musculus scalenus anterior — scalenus anterior muscle;
- 5) articulationes capitis costae — joints of the heads of ribs;
- 6) ligamentum capitis costae intraarticulare — intraarticular ligament of the head of the rib;
- 7) hypophysis cerebri — cerebral hypophysis;
- 8) os occipitale — occipital bone;
- 9) protuberantia occipitalis externa — external occipital protuberance;
- 10) lingula mandibulae — lingula of the mandible;
- 11) cavum nasi — cavity of the nose;
- 12) septum nasi osseum — osseous nasal septum.

§ 28. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved

1. *Indicate the gender of the following nouns:*

Nervus, i — nerve; collum, i — neck; sulcus, i — furrow; encephalon, i — brain; crista, ae — crest; zygoma, atis — cheek-bone; ligamentum, i — ligament; corpus, oris — body; abdomen, inis — abdomen; ductus, us — duct; humerus, i — humerus; fissura, ae — fissure; ganglion, i — ganglion; glandula, ae — gland; digitus, i — finger; tegmen, inis — roof; linea, ae — line; cornu, us — horn; meatus, us — passage.

2. *Translate the following terms into Latin. Write them down in full dictionary form:*

Arch, skull, labyrinth, roof, tubercle, sinus, gland, crest, node, acromion, brain, skeleton, nose, palate, tuber, extremity, septum, trunk, knee, neck.

3. *Translate the terms with uncoordinated attributes into Latin. Pay attention to the structure of these terms, make up the schemes:*

The nasal cavity, the mandibular notch, the neck of the ulnar, the spine of the scapula, the head of the fibular, the sulcus of the sinus, the base of the skull, the angle of the sternum, the angle of the mandibular, the tibial body, the line of the neck, the head of the ulnar, the bone of the finger, the top of the nose, the capsule of the ganglion.

4. *Make morphologic and synthetic analysis of the following anatomical terms:* processus pterygoideus (pterygoid process), incisura jugularis (jugular notch), lingula mandibulae (lingula of the mandible), aditus orbitae (the opening into the orbit), ligamentum cruciforme atlantis (the cruciform ligament of the atlas), ligamentum radiocarpum dorsale (the posterior radiocarpal ligament), apertura piriformis nasi (the anterior bony aperture of the nose), facies articularis tuberculi costae (joint of a tubercle of the rib), sulcus sinus petrosi superioris (groove for the superior petrosal sinus).

§ 29. Anatomical nouns of I–V declensions

ala, ae *f* — wing
apertura, ae *f* — opening,
bursa, ae *f* — bag
capsula, ae *f* — membrane
columna, ae *f* — column
costa, ae *f* — rib
crista, ae *f* — crest
eminentia, ae *f* — eminence
fascia, ae *f* — fascia
encephalon, i *n* — brain
ganglion, i *n* — ganglion
corpus, oris *n* — body
tempus, oris *n* — temple
foramen, inis *n* — foramen, opening

fissura, ae *f* — fissure
angulus, i *m* — angle
fundus, i *m* — fundus
musculus, i *m* — muscle
tympaanum, i *n* — drum
cavum, i *n* — cavity
collum, i *n* — neck
membrum, i *n* — extremity
tuberculum, i *n* — tubercle
os, ossis *n* — bone
arcus, us *m* — arch
processus, us *n* — process
genu, us *n* — knee

Lesson 4

Adjectives. Grammar categories of adjectives.

Dictionary form, 2 groups of adjectives.

The 1-st group of adjectives. Coordination with nouns

Aim: 1) *To know* grammar categories of the Latin adjectives, the composition of the dictionary form, the order of coordination of adjectives with nouns

2) *To be able to* make up the dictionary form of adjectives in -us and -is, to make up the form of Gen. sing. of adjectives with the ending -us, -a, -um, -is, -e, to translate the terms with coordinated attributes from Latin into English and from English into Latin

§ 30. Individual work

1. Read the text. Choose the terms and compose their schemes:

The vertebral column

The vertebral column (*columna vertebralis*) or the spine has the following structure. In accordance with three functions of the spine, each vertebra has the following features: an anterior part, this is the body (*corpus vertebrae*); an arch (*arcus vertebrae*), which is attached to the posterior surface of the body by two pedicles (*pediculi arcus vertebrae*) and contributes to the formation of the vertebral foramen (*foramen vertebrale*).

A spinous process (*processus spinosus*) arises from the arch on the midline; a transverse process (*processus transversus*) projects laterally on each side. The articular processes bind notches on the posterior vertebral corpus; these are the paired *incisurae vertebrales superiores* and *inferiores* where the intervertebral foramina (*foramina intervertebralia*) from where one vertebra is placed on another.

2. Indicate the gender of the following terms:

Processus, us; corpus, oris; ganglion, i; sulcus, i; traetus, us; cornu, us; forma, ae; derma, atis; cranium, i; encephalon, i; crus, cruris; sinus, us.

§ 31. The adjective. Grammar categories of the adjective.

Dictionary form

In Latin the adjectives define the nouns which they are related to. The adjectives are declined like the nouns. The adjectives of the Latin language are divided into two groups. The 1-st group comprises the adjectives which are declined by the first and second declensions. The 2-nd group are adjectives declined by the third declension.

Dictionary form

In the dictionaries the adjectives are given completely in the form of the masculine gender, then the ending of the feminine gender is indicated and after that the ending of the neuter gender is given. For example, longus, a, um — long; liber, a, um — free. Most of adjectives with the ending -er preserve the letter “e” only in Nom. sing. of the masculine gender, in the feminine and neuter gender this letter falls out, therefore the end of the base is written before the ending of the feminine and neuter gender in the dictionary form, for example, sinister, tra, trum — left.

A large group of adjectives has the same ending -is in the masculine and feminine gender. The dictionary form of such adjectives includes two components: the same form -is for the masculine and feminine gender and the ending -e for the neuter gender. For example, costalis, e — costal.

There is also a small group of adjectives which have the same ending in all genders. They are differentiated only by nouns. In the dictionary form such adjectives have the form of Nom. sing., then the ending in Gen. sing., with the indicated part of the base. For example, simplex, icis — simple, sapiens, ntis — intelligent.

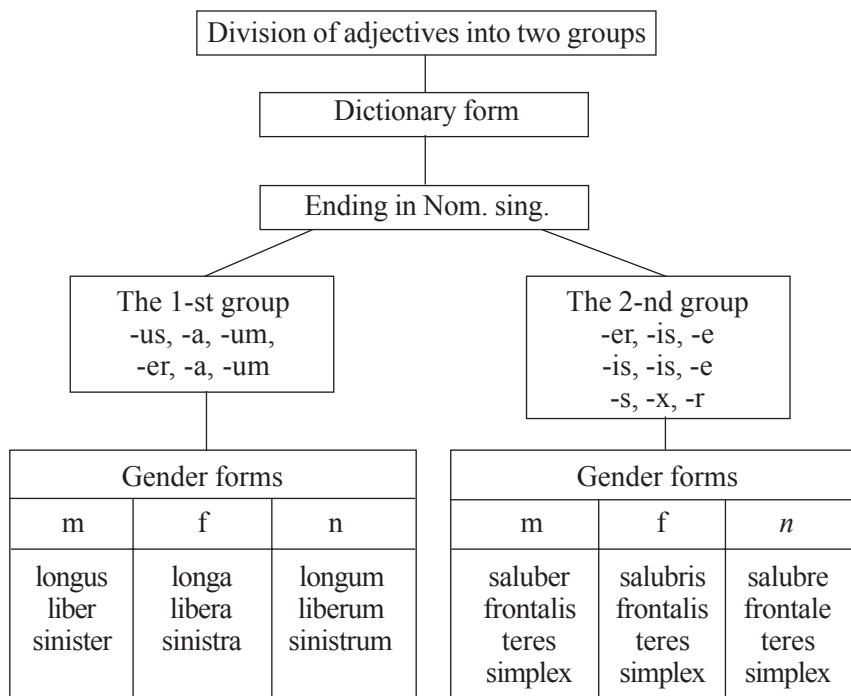
Thus, there are adjectives of three, two and one ending in the Latin language. It is shown in the following table:

Endings of adjectives

The number of gender endings	Ending in Nom. sing.			Dictionary form	Meaning
	Gender				
	m	f	n		
3	-us	-a	-um	longus, a, um	long
	-er	-a	-um	liber, a, um	free
	-er	-a	-um	sinister, a, um	left
	-er	-is	-e	celer, is, e	quick
	-er	-is	-e	saluber, bris, bre	curative
2	-is	-is	-e	temporalis, e	temporal
1	-s	-s	-s	teres, etis	round
	-x	-x	-x	simplex, icis	simple
	-r	-r	-r	par, paris	equal

§ 32. Two groups of adjectives

Depending on the gender endings in Nom. sing., the Latin adjectives are divided into two groups.



N.B. The adjectives which are commonly used in medical terminology are adjectives with the gender ending -us, -a, -um, and -s, -e. For example, osseus, a, um — osseous, bony; sacralis, e — sacral.

All adjectives should be written down and learnt in the dictionary form.

§ 33. The 1-st group of the Latin adjectives

The 1-st group of adjectives comprises the adjectives which are declined by the I–II declensions and have endings -us, -er for the masculine gender, -a — for the feminine gender and -um — for the neuter gender.

For example, rotundus, a, um — round; ruber, rubra, rubrum — red.

Most of adjectives ending in -er have a fugitive vowel “e” which falls out in Gen. sing. The following adjectives preserve the vowel “e” and they should be remembered; liber, libera, liberum — free; asper, aspera, asperum — rough, uneven; lacer, lacera, lacerum — torn; sanguifer, sanguifera, sanguiferum — circulatory. The Latin adjectives are changed in gender number and case.

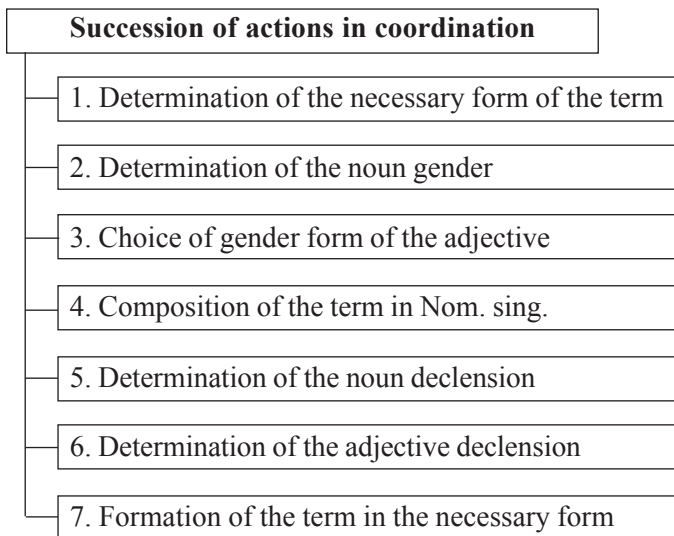
Endings of adjectives in Nom. and Gen. singular and plural:

Number	Case	Declension II	Declension I	Declension II
singular	Nom.	-us	-a	-um
	Gen.	-er -i	-a -ae	-um -i
plural	Nom.	-i	-ae	-i
	Gen.	-orum	-arum	-orum

§ 34. Coordination of adjectives with nouns

To coordinate the adjective with the noun you should define the gender, case and number of the noun.

To coordinate the adjective with the noun easily and correctly it is necessary to remember the principle of successive actions in coordination. It is presented in the following table:



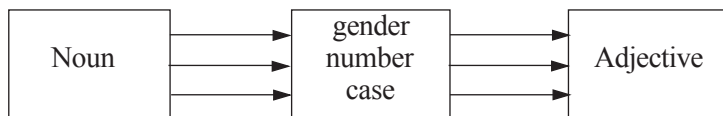
Practice this information on examples. For example, we should translate into Latin “nutritious openings”. It is the necessary to form the term in Nominative Case, plural.

First, we must determine the gender of the Latin noun “opening”. Its dictionary form is *foramen, foraminis n.* This word is of the neuter gender. Now we must choose the gender form of the dictionary form of the adjective *nutritious* — *nutritius, a, um.* So it is *nutritium* for the neuter gender. The term is “*foramen nutritium*” in Nom. sing. But the necessary form is “nutritious openings”. So we must determine the declension of the noun (*foramen* is of the III declension) and the adjective (*nutritium* is of the II declension). The necessary form is Nom. plur. It is *foramina* (Nom. plur.) — *nutricia* (Nom. plur.).

The scheme of this term is:



Coordination of adjectives with nouns



Adjectives of I–II declensions

external process	external surface	external opening
<i>processus, us</i> (m, Nom. sing.) <i>externus, a, um</i> (m, Nom. sing.) processus externus	<i>facies, ei</i> (f, Nom. sing.) <i>externus, a, um</i> (f, Nom. sing.) facies externa	<i>foramen, inis</i> (n, Nom. sing.) <i>externus, a, um</i> (n, Nom. sing.) foramen externum
external processes	external surfaces	external openings
<i>processus, us</i> (m, Nom. plur.) <i>externus, a, um</i> (m, Nom. plur.) processus externi	<i>facies, ei</i> (f, Nom. plur.) <i>externus, a, um</i> (f, Nom. plur.) facies externae	<i>foramen, inis</i> (n, Nom. plur.) <i>externus, a, um</i> (n, Nom. plur.) foramina externa

§ 35. Exercises

1. *Coordinate the adjectives of the 1-st group with the nouns before them:*

- 1) sutura squamos... — squamous suture;
- 2) substantia compact... — thick substance;
- 3) ligamentum flav... — yellow ligament;
- 4) musculus obliqu... — oblique muscle;
- 5) foramen rotund... — round opening;
- 6) ligamenta flav... — yellow ligaments;
- 7) linea asper... — rough line;
- 8) vertebra thoracic... — thoracic vertebra;
- 9) nervus optic... — optic nerve;
- 10) ventriculus sinist... — left ventricle.

2. *Write out the terms with coordinated attribute in one column and the terms with uncoordinated attributes in another one:*

Membrana sterni, crista colli costae, apertura thoracis, linea nuchae, crista occipitalis externa, squama occipitalis, sella turcica, sutura transversa, crista nasalis, sutura mediana, spina nasalis, incisura jugularis, fossa pterygoidea, crista infratemporalis, incisura mastoidea, crista galli, fossa canina, incisura sphenopalatina, eminentia arcuata, lingula mandibulae.

3. *Read the following terms, define the group of adjectives, their gender and make the Genitive Case, singular:*

Sutura squamosa, foramen rotundum, cornu sacrale, cornu coccygeum, os frontale, crista frontalis, foramen mentale, angulus frontalis, pars orbitalis, tuber parietale, sulcus pulmonalis, nervus trigeminus, sutura mediana, linea obliqua, costa vera, vertebra thoracica, fossa canina, canalis palatinus, sutura incisiva, os palatinum, ductus hepaticus, arcus palatoglossus.

4. *Make morphologic analysis of the following terms. Form Nominative and Genitive Case plural and translate the terms into English. Use the table of case endings:*

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1) sulcus sinus sagittalis; | 9) processus pterygoideus; |
| 2) sulcus sinus transversi; | 10) fossa digastrica; |
| 3) corpus ossis sphenoidalis; | 11) cornu coccygeum; |
| 4) septum sinuum sphenoidalium; | 12) processus styloideus; |
| 5) processus clinoideus; | 13) foramen stylomastoideum; |
| 6) tuberculum musculi scaleni; | 14) foramen caroticum externum; |
| 7) sulcus sinus mastoidei; | 15) foramen mastoideum. |
| 8) alae vomeris; | |

5. Translate into Latin, coordinating the adjective with the nouns in brackets. Observe the succession of actions in coordination:

Transverse (sulcus, ligament, artery); wide (fascia, ligament, muscle); left (eye, atrium, fossa); external (membrane, sulcus, opening (foramen)); deep (vein, fossa, nerve, layer); long (muscle, artery, neck); right (humerus, ventricle, scapula); osseal (substance, septum, marrow); interosseal (crest, membrane, space); palatal (process, bone, sulcus); cribrate (foramen, crest); alveolar (process, arch); venous (plexus, sinus); vertebral (foramen, canal).

6. Translate into Latin. Use the table of succession of actions in coordination:

Oblique line, deep incisure, false rib (false ribs), thoracic vertebra (thoracic vertebrae), coccygeal vertebra, the seventh vertebra, xiphoid process, zygomatic arch, splanchnic skull, external (internal) plate, petrosal nerve (petrosal nerves), coccygeal horn, hepatic duct, zygomatic bone, facial canal, large opening (large openings), frontal tuber (frontal tubera), complex joint (complex joints), iliac tubercle, petrosal branch (petrosal branches), lymphatic node.

7. Read aloud the following terms. Make their morphologic analysis and translate into English:

Nucleus pulposus, ligamenta flava, discus intervertebralis, ligamentum nuchae, ligamentum sacrococcygeum ventrale, ligamenta sacrococcygea lateralia, articulatio atlantooccipitalis, ligamenta interspinalia, ligamentum transversum atlantis, dens axis, membrana tectoria, manubrium sterni, ligamentum apicis dentis, processus xiphoideus, incisura jugularis, angulus sterni, incisurae costales, articulationes capitis costae, corpus costae, caput costae, collum costae, crista colli costae, tuberculum costae, angulus costae, sulcus costae, sulcus subclaviae arteriae, tuberculum musculi scaleni.

§ 36. Substantivization of adjectives

In Latin the adjectives sometimes become nouns, they are substantivized. For example, the names of intestines are substantivized adjectives of the neuter gender: caecum, *i n* — caecum (formed from *intestinum caecum*); rectum, *i, n* — rectum (*intestinum rectum*); ileum, *i n* — ileum; colon, *i, n* — colon.

The word “*intestinum*” is dropped out in the medical texts. But there is an exception: *intestinum tenue* — small intestine.

The names of the membranes are also substantivized:

arachnoidea, *ae f* (from *arachnoideus, a, um*) — web-like membrane of the brain; conjunctiva, *ae f* (from *tunica conjunctiva*) — connective membrane of the eye; cornea, *ae f* (from *corneus, a, um*) — cornea, corneal

membrane of the eye; decidua, *ae f* (from *diciuus*, a, um) — falling off membrane; mucosa, *ae f* (from *mucosus*, a, um) — mucous membrane.

The name of the vagus, *i m* is substantivized as well (*nervus vagus*).

§ 37. Word-building. The most important suffixes of adjectives of I–II declensions

1. Suffixes *-e-us*, *-ace-us* are added to the base of the noun forming the adjectives indicating the relation to the organ: *osseus*, a, um — osseal (from *os*, *ossis n*); *membranaceus*, a, um — membranous (from *membrana*, *ae f*); *nasopharyngeus*, a, um — nasopharyngeal.

2. Suffixes *-icus*, *-inus* from adjectives denoting belonging, relation to the place: *pancreaticus*, a, um — related to the pancreas; *palatinus*, a, um — palatal (from *palatum*, *i m* — palate).

3. The suffix *-ideus* joins the base of the noun by means of the vowel “o” and forms adjectives indicating similarity, likeness: *lambdoideus*, a, um — lambda-like; *pterygoideus*, u, um — wing-like (like *pteryx*, *pterygos* — Gr. *wing*).

4. The suffixes *-os* and *-lent* form the adjectives denoting the abundance of something. For example, *calosus*, a, um — callous (from *callus*, *i m* — *callus*, *com*); *purulentus*, a, um — purulent (from *pus*, *puris n* — *pus*).

§ 38. Exercises

1. Form adjectives with the suffix *-os* from the following nouns and translate them into English:

- 1) *fibra*, *ae f* — fiber;
- 2) *mucus*, *i m* — mucous;
- 3) *petra*, *ae f* — stone;
- 4) *squama*, *ae f* — scales;
- 5) *spina*, *ae f* — spine;
- 6) *caverna*, *ae f* — cave;
- 7) *adeps*, *adipis*, *m f* — fat.

2. Form adjectives with the meaning of likeness. Read them aloud, place the stress correctly. Translate them into English:

- 1) *xiphos* — sword (Gr.);
- 2) *pteryx*, *gos* — wing (Gr.);
- 3) *corax*, *cos* — beak (Gr.);
- 4) *delta* — Gr. letter “d”;
- 5) *rhombus* — rhomb;
- 6) *stylos* — awl;
- 7) *sigma* — Gr. letter “s”.

3. Form adjectives with the meaning of belonging, translate them.

a) with the suffix *-in*:

- 1) canis, is, m *f* — dog;
- 2) pelvis, is *f* — pelvis;
- 3) femina, ae *f* — woman;

b) with the suffix *-ic*:

- 1) lymph(a), ae *f* — lymph;
- 2) tympanum, i *n* — drum;
- 3) trochanter, eris *m* — trochanter;
- 4) zygoma, atis *n* — cheekbone;
- 5) gaster, tris *f* — stomach.

§ 39. Self-control task

Fill in the blanks:

1. The dictionary form of the adjective consists of the form of Nom. sing. masculine gender, endings ... and ... gender.

2. If the ending of the adjective in the masculine and feminine gender coincides, in the dictionary form it is written ... times.

3. If the adjective has the ending *-us* in the masculine gender, it has the ending ... in the feminine gender and ... in the neuter gender.

4. If the masculine gender has ending *-is*, then it is the adjective of ... endings: it has the ending ... in the feminine gender and ... in the neuter gender.

5. The adjectives which are ended in *-us*, *-a*, *-um* and *-er*, *-a*, *-um*, they are of ... group, the adjectives with the endings *-is*, *-e* are of ... group.

6. The adjectives with the endings *-us*, *-er* have the ending ... in Gen. sing; *-a* — ..., *-um* —

The adjectives of the masculine and feminine gender with the ending *-is* and of the neuter gender with the ending *-e* have the ending ... in Gen. sing.

§ 40. Exercises to determine the accomplishment of the aim of the class

1. Write down the adjectives in their dictionary form. Form Gen. sing., define their base and translate into English:

Flavus, occipitalis, rotundus, cardiaca, magnus, frontale, zygomaticum, transversus, hyoidea, palatina, verus, spinosus, suprascapulare, parietalis, infraorbitalis.

2. Form Nom. and Gen. plur. of the following terms. Use the table of endings:

Ligamentum flavum, ligamentum sacrococcygeum laterale, incisura costalis, articulatio sternocostalis, vertebra lumbalis, processus articularis, sul-

cus latus, linea temporalis, sulcus pulmonalis, pars lateralis, cornu coccygeum, foramen rotundum.

3. *Coordinate the adjectives with the nouns by using the table of succession of actions in coordination:*

1) ligament (flavus, a, um; supraspinalis, e; flavus, a, um; longitudinalis, e);

2) foramen (rotundus, a, um; ovalis, e; caroticus, a, um; parietalis, e; incisivus, a, um; magnus, a, um);

3) bone (occipitalis, e; temporalis, e; zygomaticus, a, um; palatinus, a, um; sphenoidalis, e).

4) incisurae (cardiacus, a, um; jugularis, e);

5) angle (mastoideus, a, um; sphenoidalis, e);

6) canal (caroticus, a, um; facialis, e; opticus, a, um; condylaris, e);

7) tuber (ischiadicus, a, um; frontalis, e; parietalis, e);

8) tubercle (pharyngeus, a, um; mentalis, e);

9) sulcus (transversus, a, um; pulmonalis, e; caroticus, a, um; lacrimalis, e);

10) suture (incisivus, a, um; medianus, a, um).

4. *Translate into Latin:*

Vertebrae (cervical, coccygeal, thoracic); lines (wide, transverse, oblique); coccygeal horns; ligaments (wide, transverse, straight); spinous processes; large openings; palatine grooves; interosseal membranes; squamous sutures; denticulated sutures; true ribs; false ribs; optical nerves; straight muscles; transverse muscles; cribrate plates.

§ 41. The adjectives of I–II declensions

albus, a, um — white

arachnoideus, a, um — cobweb

asper, a, um — rough

calcaneus, a, um — calcaneus

callosus, a, um — callous

cavernosus, a, um — cavernous

cavus, a, um — hollow

coccygeus, a, um — coccygeal

compactus, a, um — thick, compact

compositus, a, um — complex

coronarius, a, um — coronal

cribrosus, a, um — cribrate

cuboideus, a, um — cuboid

cutaneus, a, um — cutaneous

denticulatus, a, um — denticulate

dexter, tra, trum — right

durus, a, um — hard

externus, a, um — external

flavus, a, um — yellow

felleus, a, um — bilious

fibrosus, a, um — fibrous

iliacus, a, um — iliac

medianus, a, um — median

mucosus, a, um — mucous

multus, a, um — multiple

mylohyoideus, a, um — mylohyoid

nutricius, a, um — nutritious

obliquus, a, um — oblique

oblongatus, a, um — oblongatal

osseus, a, um — osteal

palatinus, a, um — palatal

palatoglossus, a, um — palatoglossal

parvus, a, um — small
petrosus, a, um — petrosal
proprius, a, um — proper
pterygoideus, a, um — wing-like
rectus, a, um — straight
rotundus, a, um — round
ruber, rubra, rubrum — red
sacer, sacra, sacrum — sacral
sacrococcygeus, a, um — sacrococ-
cygeal
scalenus, a, um — scalene
sinister, a, um — left
internus, a, um — internal
hyoideus, a, um — sublingual
lambdoideus, a, um — lambda-like
liber, a, um — free
longus, a, um — long
lymphaticus, a, um — lymphatic
magnus, a, um — large
mastoideus, a, um — mastoid
medius, a, um — medial
spurius, a, um — false
squamosus, a, um — squamous
thoracicus, a, um — thoracic
thyreoideus, a, um — thyroid
transversus, a, um — transverse
urinarius, a, um — urinary
venosus, a, um — venous
verus, a, um — true
zygomaticus, a, um — zygomatic

Lesson 5

The adjectives of the 2-nd group, their use in the medical terminology. Coordination of the adjectives of the 2-nd group with the nouns of I–V declensions _____

Aim: 1) *To know* grammar categories of the adjectives of the 2-nd group, compilation of the dictionary form, the order of coordination of adjectives with the nouns of I–V declensions

2) *To be able to* form Gen. sing., Nom. and Gen. plur. of the adjectives of the 2-nd group, translate compound terms with coordinated attributes from Latin into English and from English into Latin

§ 42. For individual work

1. Translate the following terms:

Anulus fibrosus, ligamentum latum, nucleus pulposus, cranium rotundum, substantia compacta, tunica mucosa, fissura petrosquamosa, linea aspera, plica adiposa, angulus mastoideus, ductus hepaticus, tuberculum caroticum, membrana interossea, ventriculus dexter, vesica fellea, processus transversus, vertebra septima, ligamenta flava, vertebra thoracica, tubercula carotica, cornua coccygea.

2. Translate into Latin:

Petrous part, oblique cord, the round opening, petrosal sinus, spinous process, pterygoid process, transverse ligament, false rib, pterygoid canal, fatty pads, complex joint, ellipsoid joint, pedicle of the arch, scalenus muscle, radiate eminence, petrosquamous fissure.

§ 43. The dictionary form and declension of adjectives of the 2-nd group

The adjectives of the 2-nd group are declined by III declension of nouns. According to the ending in Nominative Case singular the adjectives of the III declension are subdivided into 3 groups.

Adjectives of the III declension

Three endings	Two endings	One ending
m f n -er, -is, -e Acer, acris, acre — acute	m f n -is, -is, -e Brevis, breve — short	m f n -s, -x, -r recens, recentis — fresh simplex, simplicis — simple par, paris — equal

In the dictionaries the adjectives with three endings are written in full form only for the masculine gender, then the endings of the feminine and neuter genders are added. For example, *celer*, is, e — quick. The adjectives with two endings are written in full form for the masculine and feminine gender and then the ending of the neuter gender is added. For example, *frontalis*, e — frontal.

The dictionary form of adjectives with one ending for all three genders is different from the previous group. These adjectives are written with endings of Nominative and Genetive singular but without any indication of gender. For example, *duplex*, *icis* — double. Their base is defined by the ending in Genetive case the same as with nouns. For example, *biceps*, *bicipitis* — the base is **bicipit-**.

The adjectives of the 2-nd subgroup with two endings are commonly met in the medical terminology.

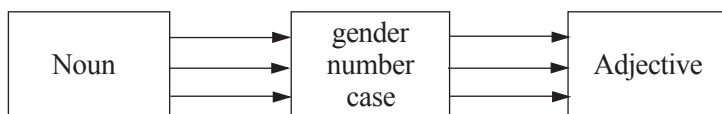
N.B. There are not many adjectives with one or three endings in the medical terminology.

Remember some of them:

acer, is, e — acute; *celer*, is, e — quick; *biceps*, *bicipitis* — two-headed; *duplex*, *icis* — double; *impar*, *imparis* — non-equal; *par*, *paris* — equal; *quadriceps*, *quadricipitis* — four-headed; *sapiens*, *sapientis* — wise; *saluber*, is, e — curative; *simplex*, *icis* — simple; *teres*, *teretis* — round; *triplex*, *icis* — triple; *triceps*, *tricipitis* — three-headed.

The adjectives of the III declension are coordinated with the nouns of I–V declensions in gender, number and case.

Coordination of adjectives with nouns:



Adjectives of the III declension		
sacral node	sacral crest	sacral horn
nodus, i (m, Nom. sing.) sacralis, e (m, Nom. sing.) nodus sacralis	crista, ae (f, Nom. sing.) sacralis, e (f, Nom. sing.) crista sacralis	cornu, us (n, Nom. sing.) sacralis, e (n, Nom. sing.) cornu sacrale
sacral nodes	sacral crests	sacral horns
nodus, i (m, Nom. plur.) sacralis, e (m, Nom. plur.) nodi sacrales	crista, ae (f, Nom. plur.) sacralis, e (f, Nom. plur.) cristae sacrales	cornu, us (n, Nom. plur.) sacralis, e (n, Nom. plur.) cornu sacralia

§ 44. Exercises

1. Rewrite the terms, put the missing ending. Define the gender and declension of the nouns:

1. Crista sacral...
2. Fovea costal...
3. Facies articula...
4. Hiatus sacral...
5. Foramen vertebral...
6. Cornu sacral...
7. Canalis sacral...
8. Incisura jugular...
9. Sulcus pulmonal...
10. Cranium visceral...
11. Os occipital...
12. Squama occipital...
13. Columna vertebral...
14. Processus articular...
15. Ligamentum longitudinal...

2. Write down the adjectives in the dictionary form. Put them in Gen. sing. and Nom. and Gen. plur.:

Articularis, caudalis, cervicalis, sacralis, superficialis, transversalis, intercostalis, vertebralis, lateralis, sacralis, proximalis, horizontalis, lateralis, verticalis, longitudinalis.

3. Coordinate the adjectives in brackets with the noun, form *Nom. plur.*:

Ligament (longitudinalis, e, supraspinalis, e, transversalis, e); opening (ovalis, e, parietalis, e, infraorbitalis, e); joint (atlantooccipitalis, e, sternocostalis, e); bone (occipitalis, e, frontalis, e, lacrimalis, e, mentalis, e, temporalis, e); canal (lacrimalis, e, facialis, e, condylaris, e); furrow (pulmonalis, e, frontalis, e, lacrimalis, e); tuber (frontalis, e, mentalis, e, parietalis, e).

4. Read aloud, make morphologic analysis of the following terms, translate them into English:

Columna vertebralis, vertebra lumbalis, vertebra sacralis, incisura vertebralis, incisura costalis, processus articularis, foramen intervertebrale, foramen vertebrale, incisura jugularis, sulcus pulmonalis, os interparietale, crista occipitalis, squama occipitalis, os occipitale, hiatus sacralis, cornu sacrale, canalis sacralis, crista sacralis, fovea costalis, facies articularis, tuberositas sacralis, columna vertebralis, fossa jugularis, massae laterales, foramina intersacralia, cornua sacralia, foramina sacralia dorsalia, vertebrae lumbales.

§ 45. Word-building. The most important suffixes of the adjectives of the III declension

1. The suffixes **-al-is**, **-ar-is** are added to the base of the noun and form the adjectives of two endings, which indicate relation to the object, belonging.

The suffix **-ar-is** is added to the base which ends in *-l*. For example, frontalis, e — frontal (from frons, frontis *f* — forehead); maxillaris, e — maxillary (from maxilla, ae *f* — maxilla, upper jaw).

2. The suffixes **-bil-is**, **-il-is** are added to the verbal base of the Present Tense. They form adjectives denoting possibility, ability with the passive meaning. For example, sanabilis, e — curable (from the verb sanare — to treat); facilis, e — easy, performed easily (from the verb facere — to do).

§ 46. Exercises

1. Form and translate the adjectives with suffixes *-al* or *-ar*:

Sacrum, *i n* — sacrum; latus, eris *n* — side; pectus, oris *n* — chest; clavicula, ae *f* — clavicle; musculus, *i m* — muscle; abdomen, inis *n* — abdomen; mentum, *i n* — chin; facies, ei *f* — face; medulla, ae *f* — spinal cord; occiput, itis *n* — back of the head.

2. Form and translate adjectives denoting belonging:

Cervix, icis *f* — neck; pulmo, onis *m* — lung; scapula, ae *f* — scapula; mandibula, ae *f* — mandible; articulus, *i m* — joint; dens, dentis *m* — tooth; tempus, oris *n* — temple; orbita, ae *f* — orbit; cortex, icis *m* — cortex; sternum, *i n* — sternum

N.B. Remember that the adjectives of the III declension of the masculine and feminine gender are declined in the same way. They have the ending **-es** in Nom. plur. and **-ium** in Gen. plur. The adjectives of the neuter gender have the ending **-ia** in Nom. plur. and **-ium** in Gen. plur.

§ 47. Tasks for self-control

Fill in the blanks:

1. The adjectives of II group are declined by ... declension.
2. The adjectives of the III declension have ... endings, ... endings and ... ending.
3. The adjectives of the masculine and feminine gender have the ending ... in Nom. sing.
4. The adjectives of the neuter gender of the III declension differ from those of the masculine and feminine gender. They have the ending ... in Nom. sing.
5. The adjectives of the III declension of the masculine and feminine gender have the ending ... in Nom. plur.
6. The adjectives of the neuter gender of the III declension have the ending ... in Nom. plur.
7. All adjectives of the III declension have the ending ... in Gen. plur.

§ 48. Control questions

1. What groups are the adjectives of the III declension in Nom. sing. divided into?
2. What group of the adjectives of the III declension is the most commonly used in anatomical terminology?
3. Give examples of the adjectives of the III declension of all subgroups.
4. Name the endings of Nom. and Gen. plur. for adjectives of the neuter gender.
5. Name the suffixes of the adjectives of the III declension.

§ 49. Exercises

1. *Give the dictionary form of the adjectives of the III declension:*
Dentatis, alveolare, craniale, temporalis, occipitalis, vertebralis, intercostale, dorsale, longitudinale, frontalis.
2. *Put the following terms in Nom. Case plur.:*
Os nasale, os temporale, os parietale, os frontale, os occipitale, os lacrimale, os sphenoidale, os ethmoidale.
3. *Form Nom. and Gen. plur. of the following terms:*

Sacræ, alveolaris, parietale, sphenoidalis, nasale, ethmoidalis, communis, articulare, transversale, longitudinalis.

4. *Translate into English, indicate case and number of the terms:*

Ligamenta (interspinalia, palmaria, alaria), plexus (rectales, viscerales), foramina (ethmoidalia, occipitalia), concha nasalis, foramen alveolare, dens premolaris, nervus spinalis, glandula lingualis, pars lateralis.

5. *Coordinate the adjectives of the III declension with the nouns taking into consideration the succession of actions in coordination:*

1) ligamentum (dorsalis, e; transversalis, e);

2) ductus (communis, e);

3) labium, cavitas (sphenoidalis, e);

4) fascia (thoracolumbalis, e);

5) trigonum (submandibularis, e);

6) vas, vasis *n* (capillaris, e);

7) foramen (suprapiriformis, e);

8) cavum (maxillaris, e);

9) canalis (femoralis, e);

10) sinus (frontalis, e).

6. *Translate into Latin:*

Jugular opening, jugular fossa, jugular incisura, frontal sinus, frontal tuber, clinoid sinus, lateral wall, nasal bone, cribrate bone, palatal bone, palatal bones, costal surface, supraciliary arch, supraciliary arches, nasal bones, nasal surface.

7. *Translate the anatomical terms from Latin into English:*

Canaliculus dentalis, ganglion cardiacum, gyrus temporalis transversus, vena centralis, crus osseum, foramen ethmoidale, ganglion renale, cornu sacrale, nervus spinalis, plica gastrica, incisura costalis, pars lateralis, junctura synovialis, ligamentum cruciforme atlantis, tuberositas deltoidea, cavum articulare, membrana interossea cruris, ligamentum plantare, membrana arachnoidea, crista occipitalis externa, tuberculum pharyngeum, septum nasi osseum, regio occipitalis, cornu coccygeum, foramen magnum.

8. *Translate the anatomical terms from English into Latin:*

Carpal articular surface, radial collateral ligaments, trochlear notch, circumference and articular surface, sternoclavicular joint, supraglenoid tubercle, fossa of the lacrimal, ethmoidal labyrinth, base of the mandible, mental protuberance, angle of the mandible, hyoid bone, lingula of the mandible, mandibular foramen, intertubercular groove, external surface of the base of the skull, sternal end, lateral border, neck of the scapula, opening into the orbit, sagittal suture, temporal fossa, lateral ligament, orbital fissure, joints of the heads of ribs, pedicle of the arch, rostrum of the sphenoid, osseous nasal septum.

§ 50. The adjectives of the III declension

abdominalis, e — abdominal

alaris, e — alar

alveolaris, e — alveolar

auricularis, e — auricular

biceps, itis — two-headed

capillaris, e — capillary

cerebralis, e — cerebral

cervicalis, e — cervical

duplex, icis — double

omnis, e — common

palmaris, e — palmar

par, paris, e — equal

parietalis, e — parietal

pectoralis, e — pectoral

pulmonalis, e — pulmonary

rectalis, e — rectal

sapiens, entis — intelligent

simplex, icis — simple

ethmoidalis, e — cribrate

frontalis, e — frontal

impar, imparis, e — non-equal

mandibularis, e — mandibular

maxillaris, e — maxillary

medullaris, e — medullar

nasalis, e — nasal

sphenoidalis, e — sphenoid

tenuis, e — thin

teres, etis — round

triceps, itis — three-headed

quadriceps, ipitis — four-headed

vaginalis, e — vaginal

visceralis, e — visceral

Lesson 6

The adjective. The use of degrees of comparison in the anatomical terminology. Declension of adjectives in all degrees of comparison. Exceptions from degrees of comparison. Defective degrees of comparison _____

Aim: 1) *To know* the rules of formations of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2) *To be able to* differ the comparative forms from that of the positive ones; to form Gen. sing. and plur. of the comparative degree; to coordinate the adjectives in the comparative and superlative degrees with nouns of I–V declensions.

§ 51. For individual work

1. *Translate the following terms and define the case, number, gender and declension of nouns and adjectives:*

Discus intervertebralis, articulatio atlantooccipitalis, ligamentum cruciforme atlantis, incisura jugularis, articulationes sternocostales, apertura sinus sphenoidalis, septum sinuum frontalem, spina ossis sphenoidalis, tubercula mentalia, margo frontalis, margines frontales, fossa sacci lacrimalis, geniculum canalis facialis, alveoli dentales, hiatus maxillaris, crista occipitalis interna, ossa nasalia.

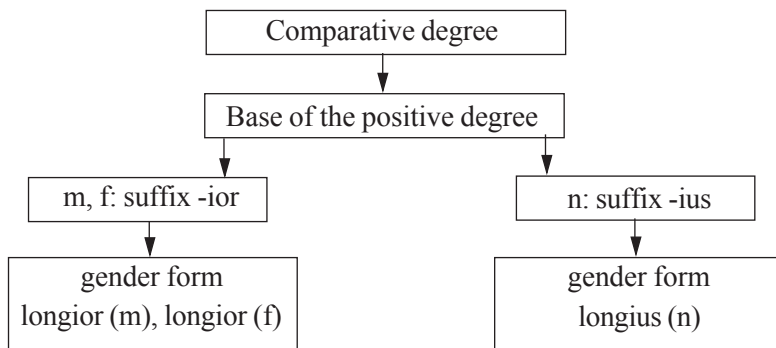
2. *Translate into Latin:*

Vertebral column, cervical vertebrae, vertebra prominens, first and second cervical vertebrae, lateral masses, costal facets, transverse costal facet, lumbar and coccygeal vertebrae, alar ligaments of the odontoid process, cruciform ligament of the axis, terminal sulcus, gelatinous matter, white matter, right subclavian trunk, left jugular trunk, right and left lumbar trunks, buccal lymph glands, lymphatic vessels, transverse fissure of the cerebrum, trigeminal nerve, superficial circumflex iliac artery.

§ 52. The use of degrees of comparison in the anatomical terminology

In the anatomical terminology adjectives are used in all degrees of comparison: positive, comparative and superlative. Only qualitative adjectives have got degrees of comparison: small, white, deep, round, good, etc.

Formation of the comparative degree



Example:

Positive degree	→	Comparative degree
longus, a, um	→	longior (m, f), longius (n)
ruber, bra, brum	→	rubrior (m, f), rubrius (n)
brevis, e	→	brevior (m, f), brevisus (n)
simplex, icis	→	simplicior (m, f), simplicius (n)

The dictionary form of adjectives in the comparative degree is given in the same way as adjectives of two endings. For example, rubrior, ius — redder; breviar, ius — shorter.

In the comparative degree all adjectives are declined as the nouns of the III declension with the ending **-or** (for example, rubor, ruboris) and the neuter gender is declined as the nouns of the III declension with the ending **-us** (e.g. corpus, corporis).

For example: Put the following terms in Gen. sing. and Nom. plur.: major, majus, inferior, inferius, breviar, minor, minus, latior; arcus posterior, linea temporalis superior, foramen ischiadicum minus, vena cava inferior.

§ 53. The use of the comparative degree of adjective, meaning “large”, “small”, “upper”, “lower”, “anterior”, “posterior” in the medical terminology

The enumerated adjectives may have no positive degree at all or their positive degree is used rarely and with special meaning; their comparative degree takes the meaning of the positive one.

The positive and the comparative degrees of the adjectives “large” and “small” are formed from different bases. They are often used in the medical terminology.

Remember these forms of adjectives:

Gradus positivus	→	Gradus comparativus
magnus, a, um — large	→	major (m, f), majus (n)
parvus, a, um — small	→	minor (m, f), minus (n)

The comparative degree of the adjectives *magnus*, a, um and *parvus*, a, um are used in pair anatomical formations and they are translated into English by the positive or comparative degree: ala major — a great wing, ala minor — smaller wing; tuberculum majus — greater tubercle, tuberculum minus — smaller tubercle. If we describe a single formation, the positive degree is used, e.g., foramen occipitale magnum — great foramen.

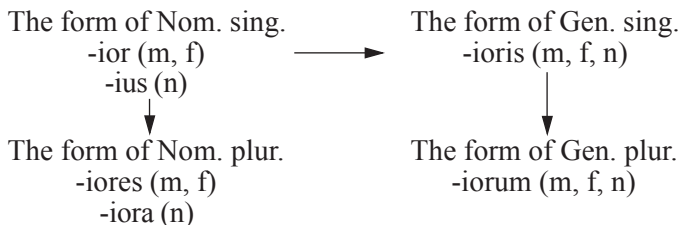
The Latin adjectives with the meaning “upper”, “lower”, “anterior”, “posterior”, do not have the form of the positive degree at all, therefore their comparative degree is translated into English as the positive one: superior, ius — upper, posterior, ius — posterior.

In the verbose anatomical terms the adjectives “large”, “small”, “upper”, “posterior” often define not a single noun but the whole word combination, therefore they are usually placed last in the term.

E.g. apertura pelvis superior — pelvic inlet, foramen ischiadicum majus et minus — greater and lesser sciatic foramina.

All adjectives in the comparative degree are coordinated with nouns in the same way as those in the positive degree.

N.B. The form of Gen. sing. of the comparative degree is the same for all genders.



Remember the examples:

Nominativus singularis

major (m)
major (f)
majus (n)
superior (m)
superior (f)
superius (n)

Genetivus singularis

majoris
majoris
majoris
superioris
superioris
superioris

Nominativus pluralis

majores (m, f)
majora (n)
superiores (m, f)
superiora (n)

Genetivus pluralis

(m, f, n) — majorum

(m, f, n) — superiorum

§ 54. Exercises

1. Fill in the missing ending taking into consideration the rules of coordination of adjectives with nouns, translate into English:

Linea nuchae super..., fissura orbitalis super..., tuberculum anteri... et posteri..., facies articularis anteri... et posteri..., canalis palatinus maj..., canales palatini minor..., pars posteri..., foramen inferi..., apertura pelvis inferi..., pelvis maj..., ligamentum pubic..., superi...

2. Coordinate the adjectives with the nouns taking into consideration the rules of coordination:

Anterior (surface, crest, ligament, foramen, sulcus, extremity); posterior (foramen, arch, ligament, branch, fontanel); large (great) (pelvis, horn, wing); small (pelvis, tubercle, foramen); upper (muscle, process, foramen).

3. Put the following terms in Gen. sing., pay attention to the declension and gender of the nouns and adjectives:

Pars superior, ramus anterior, fonticulus posterior, foramen superius, fovea costalis inferior, ligamentum talofibulare anterius, musculus rhomboideus major, musculus obliquus, caput inferius, lamina anterior, canalis superior, paries anterior, curvatura ventriculi minor (major), omentum majus, cartilago alaris major, cornu majus et minus.

4. Put the adjectives of the masculine, feminine and neuter genders in Gen. sing and indicate the base:

Latior, ius, longior, ius, posterior, ius, minor, us, major, ius, brevior, ius, inferior, ius.

5. Translate the following terms and indicate the gender of the adjectives and the degree of comparison:

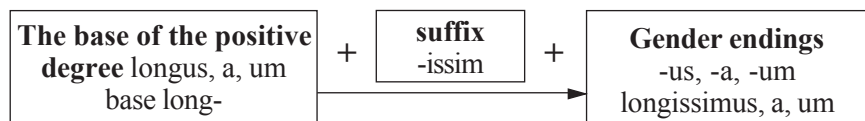
Foramen magnum, facies anterior, pancreas accessorium, ductus hepaticus communis, lobus hepatis sinister, lobus inferior, ligamentum talofibulare anterius, sulcus sinus sagittalis superioris, alae majores, linea mediana anterior, sulcus sinus petrosi superioris, foramina carotica externa, processus mastoidei, linea temporalis inferior.

6. *Translate into Latin:*

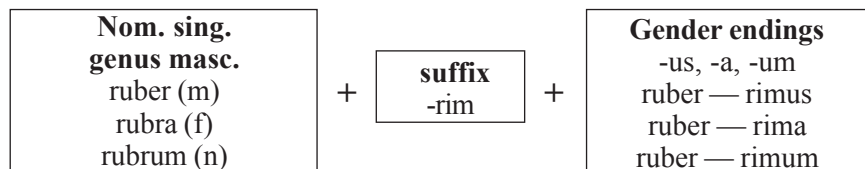
Tibialis anterior muscle, adductor magnus muscle, inferior articular processes, inferior orbital fissure, greater palatine canal, anterior wall, anterior nasal spine, inferior temporal lines, superior orbital fissure, anterior and posterior ethmoidal foramina, groove for the superior petrosal sinus, sulcus of the greater petrosal nerve, sulcus of the lesser petrosal nerve, greater wings, posterior condylar canal.

§ 55. The formation of the superlative degree

The superlative degree of adjectives (except those with the ending -er) is formed from the base of the positive degree by the adding suffix -issim and gender endings -us (m), -a (f), -um (n).



The superlative degree of adjectives with the ending -er is formed by adding suffix -rim and gender endings -us, -a, -um to the form of Nom. sing. of the masculine gender in the positive degree.



The sign of the superlative degree is doubled consonant -ss or -rr. The superlative degree of adjectives has the same gender endings and the same dictionary form as adjectives of I group, for example:

longissimus, a, um — the longest, ruberrimus, a, um — the reddest.

In the medical terminology the superlative degree is not infrequently translated as the positive one, e.g., musculus latissimus dorsi — wide muscle of the back.

§ 56. Exceptions from degrees of comparison

Some adjectives form the degrees of comparison, the comparative and superlative ones, by using different bases.

Degrees of comparison formed from different bases

Positive degree Gradus positivus	Comparative degree Gradus comparativus	Superlative degree Gradus superlativus
bonus, a, um — good	melior, melius — better	optimus, a, um — the best
malus, a, um — bad	peior, peius — worse	pessimus, a, um — the worst
magnus, a, um — large (great)	major, majus — larger (greater) (in size)	maximus, a, um — the largest
parvus, a, um — small	minor, minus — smaller (less)	minimus, a, us — the smallest
multus, a, um — multiple	plus (neutr.) — large (in quantity); plures, plura — more multiple numerous	plurimus, a, um — the most numerous

Defective degrees of comparison

Comparative degree Gradus comparativus	Superlative degree Gradus superlativus
m, f, n superior, superius — upper	supremus, a, um — the highest summus, a, um — the highest
inferior, inferius — lower	infimus, a, um — the lowest
anterior, antierius — anterior	—
posterior, posterius — posterior	postremus, a, um — the last
propior, propius — nearer	proximus, a, um — the nearest
prior, prius — former	primus, a, um — the first

The superlative degree of the adjective superior, ius — upper is supremus, a, um — the highest. The adjectives maximus, a, um and supremus, a, um are sometimes translated similarly — the highest. However, *maximus*, a, um characterizes the largest quantity, amount, and *supremus*, a, um

— the height. *E.g.*, *dosis maxima* — the largest dose, *linea suprema* — the highest line.

The adjective *proximalis*, *e* indicating the part of the body, situated on the extremities nearer to the trunk is formed from the superlative degree of the adjective *proximus*, *a*, *um*. The part of the body situated farther from the trunk is indicated by the adjective *distalis*, *e*.

The adjectives in the superlative degree are declined as the adjectives of the I group.

§ 57. Exercises

1. Put the following adjectives in the positive, comparative and superlative degrees, coordinate them with nouns:

Short (rib, muscle, ligament), small (lesser) (tubercle, nerve, dose), greater (trochanter, circle).

2. Put the following terms in *Nom. pluralis*:

Foramen posterius — posterior foramen; tuberculum anterius — anterior tubercle; ala major — great wing; facies articularis superior — upper articular surface; sulcus sinus petrosi inferioris — groove for the inferior petrosal sinus.

3. Translate into Latin:

Wide muscle of the back, upper articular surface, anterior hiatus sacralis (in sing. and plur.), posterior hiatus sacralis, superior orbital fissure, anterior longitudinal ligament of the spine, musculus capitis major and minor, superior and inferior oblique muscles, upper lip/lower lip, muscles of the upper lip, anterior crest of the fibula, surface of the greater trochanter, hiatus sacralis major and minor, minor adductor muscle, maximal/minimal dose.

§ 58. Self-control task

Fill in the blanks:

1. The sign of the comparative degree of adjectives is the suffix ... , for masculine and feminine gender and suffix ... for neuter gender.

2. The dictionary form of the comparative degree consists of general form of ... gender and ... gender and suffix ... of gender.

3. The comparative degree of adjectives is declined by III declension, i.e. in Gen. sing. it has the ending

4. The base of the comparative degree is defined by ... case.

5. The sign of the superlative degree of adjectives is doubled consonant ... or

6. To indicate paired anatomical objects we use the comparative degree of the adjectives

7. The adjectives *large, small, upper* do not define a single noun but ... and

§ 59. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved

1. Fill in the missing endings, put the terms in Gen. sing.

Tuberculum thyreoide... superi..., processus articular... inferi..., musculus scalen... anteri..., caput superi... muscul... pterygoide... lateralis, cingulum membr... superi..., spina nasal... anteri..., fossa crani... anteri..., ala mai... oss... sphenoidal..., incisura ischiadic... maj..., ligamentum capit... fibul... posteri..., linea nuch... suprem..., linea nuchae superi...

2. Translate into Latin:

Greater palatine foramen, anterior cranial fossa, superior horn, thyroid notch, lower and small cartilages of the nose, posterior surface, lesser curvature of the stomach, smaller sublingual ducts, musculus abductor digiti minimi.

§ 60. The adjectives in the comparative and superlative degrees

superior, ius — upper

inferior, ius — lower

anterior, ius — anterior

posterior, ius — posterior

propior, ius — near

prior, ius — former

bonus, a, um — good

malus, a, um — bad

magnus, a, um — large (great)

multus, a, um — multiple

melior, ius — better

peior, peius — worse

major, ius — large (in size)

minor, minus — less

plus — large (in number)

plures, plura — large (in plural)

optimus, a, um — the best

pessimus, a, um — the worst

maximus, a, um — the largest

minimus, a, um — the least

plurimus, a, um — the most numerous

supremus, a, um — the highest

Lesson 7

Individual preparation for content control on the anatomical terminology _____

Aim: 1) *To repeat* the material of the lessons 3–6

2) *To be able to* translate the terms with coordinated and uncoordinated attributes from Latin into English and from English into Latin

§ 61. Exercises

1. *Complete the dictionary form of the nouns, translate into English:*

Costa, glandula, ligamentum, corpus, foramen, pes, fel, dens, genu, sulcus, arteria, gyrus, os, auris, mesenterium, dorsum, musculus, squama, valetudo.

2. *Define the declension and the base of the nouns:*

Foramen, inis *n*; corpus, oris *n*; genu, us *n*; facies, ei *f*; ductus, us *m*; morbus, i *m*; glandula, ae *f*; zygoma, atis *n*; forma, ae *f*; species, ei *f*; skeleton, i *n*; cochlea, ae *f*; margo, inis *m*; dens, ntis *m*; os, oris *n*; cutis, is *f*.

3. *Write out the terms with the coordinated attributes in one column and with uncoordinated attributes in another one. Translate them into English:*

Condylus occipitalis, crista occipitalis interna, cranium viscerale, sulcus pulmonalis, tuberculum costae, angulus costae, cavum thoracis, collum costae, crista colli costae, ligamentum longitudinale, ligamentum sacrococcygeum dorsale, ligamentum transversum atlantis, angulus sterni nervus opticus, vena cava inferior, vena portae, arteria sacralis mediana, arteria carotis interna, cavum nasi, cavum cranii, dorsum sellae, sulcus caroticus, sulcus sinus sigmoidei, tuberculum pharyngeum, discus articularis, septum nasi osseum, tuberculum articularis, collum mandibulae.

4. *Write the dictionary form of the adjectives:*

Latus, costalis, communis, spinalis, orbitalis, hamatus, cuboideus, navicularis, sternalis, costalis, longus, visceralis, simplex, venosus, arteriosus, squamosus, spinosus.

5. *Form Gen. sing. and Nom. plur. from each gender form of adjectives:*

Proximalis, e; dentalis, e; teres, etis; simplex, icis; pterygoideus, a, um; serratus, a, um; caninus, a, um; cervicalis, e; frontalis, e; thoracicus, a, um; palatoglossus, a, um; durus, a, um; coronarius, a, um; alaris, e; jugularis, e; nasalis, e; infraorbitalis, e.

6. *Write the adjectives in full dictionary form, make up Nom. and Gen. plur.:*

Superior, inferior, magnus, major, minor, parvus, anterior.

7. *Coordinate the adjectives in brackets with the nouns:*

Angle (lower, lateral, upper, clinoid), margin (supraorbital, median, upper, lateral), bone (main, interparietal, pisiform, navicular), surface (costal, spinal, external, posterior), muscle (quadrant, papillaris, oblique, wide), sulcus (transverse, pulmonary, sublingual, frontal), vertebra (cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral, coccygeal), process (transverse, articular, cribrate, palatal, frontal, temporal, clinoid, orbital), foramen (oval, round, occipital, spinal, vertebral).

8. *Coordinate the adjective with the nouns in brackets:*

Transverse (sulcus, ligament, line), articular (process, surface, tubercle), clinoid (sinus, shell, bone), palatal (process, bone, sulcus), venous (plexus, sinus), suborbital (canal, foramen, sulcus), large (trochanter, wing, tuberosity, foramen), lower (sinus, notch, foramen), small (nerve, artery, body, interspace), anterior (branch, ramus, plate, ligament, part), upper (slit, fissure, wall, way, surface, foramen, shell, concha, line).

9. *Insert the endings instead of points. Put the terms in Gen. sing. and Nom. plur., translate them:*

Arteria axillar..., arteria thoracic... suprem..., arteria profund... brach..., ramus visceral..., membrana interosse..., ligamentum longitudinal... inferi..., arteria iliac... commun... sinistr..., pars ventral... pont..., corpus trapezoide..., hemispherium dextr... et sinistr..., gyrus temporal... superi..., sulcus infra-parietal..., lobulus parietal..., foramen intraventricular..., cornu anter..., corpus callos... .

10. *Exercises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved.*

1) *Translate into English:*

Valva atrioventricularis sinistra, ostium atrioventriculare dextrum, valvula venae cavae inferioris, truncus pulmonalis, incisura apicis cordis, musculi papillares, cavum pericardii, bulbus aortae, aorta carotis externa, arteria carotis communis dextra, arteria cerebelli inferior posterior, tractus opticus, arteriae alveolares superiores posteriores, arteria circumflexa humeri posterior, vena iliaca communis, vena subclavia, vena saphena magna, vena saphena parva, rami cutanei nervi femoralis, nervus cutaneus femoris posterior, nervus cutaneus surae lateralis, nodi lymphatici poplitei, nodi lymphatici

inguinales superficiales, nodi lymphatici iliaci externi (interni), nodi lymphatici cervicales profundi, medulla spinalis, substantia grisea, ganglion spinale, dura mater medullae spinalis, nucleus thoracicus, tractus spinocerebralis anterior, commissura alba, ganglion trunci sympathici, cavum epidurale, septum cervicale intermedium, fissura transversa cerebri, caput superioris musculi pterygoidei lateralis, gyrus temporalis inferior nervus cutaneus antebrachii lateralis, nervi digitales palmares communes, tunica vasculosa bulbi, corpus ciliare, musculus sphincter pupillae, margo pupillaris, stratum pigmenti retinae, pars optica retinae, corpus vitreum, camera anterior bulbi, cavum pelvis, linea terminalis, apertura pelvis inferior, distantia spinarum, collum femoris, ligamentum popliteum obliquum, ligamentum capitis fibulae anterius and posterius, ligamenta tarsometatarsea dorsalia, fixum punctum, musculi serrati posteriores, musculus latissimus dorsi, linea nuchae suprema, musculus rectus capitis posterior minor, musculus obliquus externus abdominis, margo anterior, os hyoideum, nodus lymphaticus, spina nasalis posterior, colon transversum, fissura orbitalis, radix vestibularis, foramen occipitale magnum, crista tuberculi minoris, fornix pharyngis, meatus externus, incisura pancreatis, dura mater encephali, lobus hepatis dexter.

2) *Translate into Latin:*

Deep inguinal ring, muscle stylohyoid, longus capitis muscle, posterior region, superficial layer of the cervical fascia proper, deep layer of the cervical fascia proper, oblique head, dorsal fascia of the foot, plantar aponeurosis, inferior peroneal retinaculum, coeliac branches, recurrent laryngeal nerve, vagus nerve, nuclei of nervi vagi, lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm, nerve to the serratus anterior muscle, middle temporal gyrus, horizontal gyri of the frontal lobe, inferior parietal lobule, commissure of the fornix, medial wall of posterior horn, inferior surface of the cerebrum, spinal arachnoid mater, spinal pia mater, pyramids of the medulla oblongata, colliculus superior of lamina tecti, middle cerebellar peduncles, nucleus of the vagus nerve, wall of the tympanic cavity, arteria jugular vein, superior thyroid veins, deep lymphatic vessels of thigh, deep inguinal lymph node, parotid lymph node, cisterna chyli, right subclavian trunk, left jugular trunk, external and common iliac lymph glands, chylous or milky vessels, hypophysis cerebri, sesamoid bone of thumb, distal radioulnar articulation, radiocarpal joint space, trochanteris fossa, acute angle, transverse ligament of the acetabulum, intercondylar eminence, tuberosity of the tibia deep infrapatellar bursa, spongy bones, anterior and posterior ligaments of the superior tibiofibular joint, scalenus anterior muscle, the deep layer of the cervical fascia proper.

Lesson 8

The Verb. Grammatical categories and dictionary form. The notion about four conjugations and the base. The Present Tense of the Indicative Mood in the Active and Passive Voice (Praesens indicativi activi et passivi). The word order in Latin sentences, the auxiliary verb “esse” — “to be” _____

Aim: 1) *To know* the rules of formation of sing. and plur. of the Present Tense, the word order in the Latin sentences

2) *To be able to* find the base of the verb and determine its conjugation; to form and translate some forms of the Present Tense. To be able to translate simple sentences, aphorisms

§ 62. Some grammatical categories of the verb. The dictionary form and the base of the verb of the Indefinite Mood (Infinitivus)

The Latin verbs are changed in persons, numbers, tenses and moods. The verbs have three persons, two numbers (sing. and plur.), six tenses (we study only the Present Tense), four moods (we study only the Indefinite Mood and the Indicative Mood). The Latin verb has two voices: Active (Activum) and Passive (Passivum). The Active Voice denotes the action which is performed by the subject and the Passive Voice means the action which is performed with the subject.

Depending on the final sound of the base the verbs are divided into four conjugations.

I conjugation	II conjugation	III conjugation	IV conjugation
-a	-e	consonant sound	-i

The dictionary form of the verbs in the medical dictionaries includes:

- 1) full form of the 1-st person (Praesens indicativi activi) — the ending -o;
- 2) the ending of the infinitive -re with the preceding vowel.

At the end of the dictionary form there is a figure which denotes conjugation which may be determined by the vowel sound standing before -re.

Examples of the dictionary form of the verbs: signo, āre I — to designate; habeo, ēre II — to have; addo, ĩere III — to add; diluo, ĩere III — to dilute; audio, ĩre IV — to hear.

N.B. In the II and III conjugations the vowel — e differs not only in length: in the II conjugation it is related to the base, but in the III one it is a connective vowel and stands between the base and the ending.

Determination of the base. The base is determined by the form of the infinitive, if the ending -re is thrown off in verbs of I, II and IV conjugation and -ere — in verbs of III conjugation.

§ 63. Formation of the infinitive and determination of the base of verbs of I–IV conjugations

The dictionary form	Conjugation	Infinitive	To throw off	Base
do, dāre	I	dare	-re	da-
habeo, ēre	II	habere	-re	habe-
addo, ĩere	III	addere	-ere	add-
diluo, ĩere	III	diluere	-ere	dilu-
finio, ĩre	IV	finire	-ire	fini-

§ 64. Praesens Indicativi Activi et Passivi

Indicativus denotes the action without expressing the attitude to the information. It is formed by joining the base of the Present Tense and the endings of activi et passivi. In the verbs of I, II, III, IV conjugations the endings are added to the base, in verbs of the III declension the endings are added to the base with the help of the connective vowel “i” (it is changed into “e” before -r). In the 3-rd person plural the verbs of III and IV conjugations have the connective vowel “u”.

Praesens indicativi activi et passivi

Personal endings

Activum	Passivum
sing.	sing.
1 person -o (m)	1 person -or (r)
2 person -s	2 person -ris
3 person -t	3 person -tur
plur	plur.
1 person -mus	1 person -mur
2 person -tis	2 person -mini
3 person -nt	3 person -ntur

Examples of the conjugation

sano, sanāre I — to treat

Praesens Indicativi Activi

sing.	plur.
1. sano — I treat	1. sanamus — we treat
2. sanas — you treat	2. sanatis — you treat
3. sanat — he treats	3. sanant — they treat

Praesens Indicativi Passivi

sing.	plur.
1. sanor — I am treated	1. sanamur — we are treated
2. sanaris — you are treated	2. sanamini — you are treated
3. sanatur — he is treated	3. sanantur — they are treated

distinguo, distinguere III — to distinguish

Praesens Indicativi Activi

sing.	plur.
1. distingo — I distinguish	1. distinguiamus — we distinguish
2. distinguis — you distinguish	2. distinguitis — you distinguish
3. distinguit — he distinguishes	3. distingunt — they distinguish

Praesens Indicativi Passivi

sing.	plur.
1. distinguor — I am distinguished	1. distinguimur — we are distinguished
2. distingueris — you are distinguished	2. distinguimini — you are distinguished
3. distinguitur — he is distinguished	3. distinguuntur — they are distinguished

sum, esse — to be

Praesens Indicativi

sing.	plur.
1. sum — I am	1. sumus — we are
2. es — you are	2. estis — you are
3. est — he, she, it is	3. sunt — they are

The auxiliary verb *to be* — sum, esse, has independent meaning *to exist*, *to be situated* and may be a link verb in compound nominative or verbal predicate.

The word order in the Latin sentence is free and depends mainly on logic stress of separate parts of the sentence. However, the following word order is generally accepted and often used:

1. The subject is on the first place.
2. The predicate is the last.
3. The secondary parts of the sentence are between the subject and the predicate.
4. As a rule, the attribute is after the defined word in the medical terminology.

Examples of the generally accepted word order

1. Inspiratio et exspiratio partes motus respirationis sunt (Inspiration and expiration are parts of respiratory motion).
2. Substantia ossea in substantiam compactam et substantiam spongiosam dividitur (The bone substance is divided into dense and spongy).
3. Chirurgus fracturam costarum curat (The surgeon treats the fracture of ribs).
4. Bene dignoscitur, bene curatur (What is well recognised is treated well).
5. Vivere est militare (To live is to fight).

§ 65. Exercises

1. Define the base of the Present Tense and conjugation of the following verbs:

Praeparantur, funiuntur, solvuntur, dividitur, nominatur, curant, videtur, vivitur, inservitur.

2. Fill in the missed vowels, translate them:

Absorb...tur II (to absorb), mov...t II (to move), accumul...tur I (to accumulate), extrah...nt III (to extract), add...tur III (to add), exper...tur IV (to research), signa...nt I (to designate), divid...tur III (to divide), audi...ntur (to hear).

3. *Form Praesens ind. activi et passivi in the 3-rd person sing. and plur. of the verbs:*

curo, curare I — to treat; praeparo, praeparare II — to prepare; misceo, miscere II — to mix; distingo, distinguere III — to distinguish; tero, terere III — to rub; absorbeo, absorbere II — to absorb; inficio, inficere III — to infect; moveo, movere II — to move; vivo, vivere III — to live; nomino nominare I — to name.

§ 66. Vocabulary

affero, afferre — to bring

alo, alere — to feed

bibo, bibere — to drink

colligo, colligere — to collect

consto, constare — to consist

formo, formare — to form

habeo, habere — to have

inservio, inservire — to serve

affigo, affigere — to fasten

ascendo, ascendere — to ascend

cognosce, cognoscere — to recognize

conjungo, conjungere — to join

contraho, contrahere — to contract

finio, finire — to finish

jaceo, jacere — to be situated

laedo, laedere — to harm

Lesson 9

Nouns of the I and II declension. Word-building. The most important suffixes of nouns of I–II declensions. Declension of nouns of Greek origin. The translation of the anatomical terms with the nouns of I and II declensions _____

Aim: 1) *To know* the signs of gender and bases of nouns of I–II declensions

2) *To be able to* coordinate adjectives with nouns of I–II declensions in Nom. and Gen. sing. (plur.), to translate simple and compound anatomical terms from Latin into English and from English into Latin

§ 67. Nouns of the I declension

The I declension consists of the nouns of the feminine gender which have the ending -a in Nom. sing. and -ae — in Gen. sing. The adjectives in the feminine gender of I–II declensions having the endings -us, -a, -um (-er, -a, -um) in Nom. sing. are declined similarly. *E.g.*, *costa, aef* — rib; *costa vera* — the authentic rib.

§ 68. Exercises

1. *Translate into Latin coordinating adjectives with nouns:*

Scapula (right, left), deep notch (sing. and plur.), spongy substance (sing. and plur.), coronal suture (sing. and plur.), squamous suture, cribrate plate, median palatine suture, transverse palatine suture, internal oblique line.

2. *Translate into English, put the terms in Gen. sing.:*

Calvaria, incisura, choana, concha, vertebra, vertebra thoracica, costa vera, costa spuria, sutura squamosa, crista buccinatoria, sutura serrata, sutura transversa, sella turcica, sutura mediana, fossa pterygoidea, fossa canina, ala major, crista nasalis, incisura jugularis, eminentia arcuata, squama occipitalis, apertura thoracis superior.

§ 69. Declension of nouns of Greek origin.

The I Greek declension

The I Greek declension consists of the nouns of the masculine gender with the ending -es and of the feminine gender with -e in Nom. sing.

For example: diabetes, ae *m* — diabetes; diastole, es *f* — diastole, the phase of heart dilatation.

In Gen. sing. the nouns of the masculine gender end in the diphthong -ae and of the feminine gender -es.

§ 70. Nouns of the II declension of the masculine and neuter gender

The II declension consists of the nouns of the masculine and neuter gender which have the ending -i in Gen. sing.

In Nom. sing. the nouns of the masculine gender end in -us (-er) and the nouns of the neuter gender — -um. The nouns of II declension are related to the adjectives of the masculine and neuter gender ending in -us (-er), -a, -um. The examples in the dictionary form: medicus, i *m* — a physician; latus, a, um — broad; puer, pueri *m* — boy (child); dexter, a, um — right; paediatr, tri *m* — pediatrician.

The II declension has got one noun of the masculine gender in -ir: vir, i *m* — man.

N.B. While declining nouns and adjectives of the II declension of the neuter gender, attention should be paid to the ending -a in Nom. plur.

For example:

Nom. sing. — ligamentum latum	Nom. plur. — ligament-a lat-a
Gen. sing. — ligament-i lat-i	Gen. plur. — ligament-orum lat-orum

§ 71. Exercise

Form Nom. and Gen. plur., translate into English:

Ligamentum sacrococcygeum ventrale, ligamentum intertransversarium, tuberculum anterius and posterius, cranium viscerale, brachium, antebra-chium, dorsum, epigastrium, hypogastrium, collon, mesogastrium, omen-tum, peritoneum.

§ 72. The nouns of the neuter gender of Greek origin

The neuter gender of the II declension is related to the nouns with the ending -on, loaned from the Greek language. *E.g.*, *skeleton* — *skeleton*, *pharmacon* — *medicine*.

These nouns became latinized, they are declined by the II declension as nouns of the neuter gender. In Nom. sing. they have the Latin ending -um equally with the Greek ending -on. *E.g.*, *cranium* and *cranium*, *skeleton* and *sceletum*.

The latinized nouns of Greek origin with the ending -on in the neuter gender of the II declension, *ganglion*, *i n* — *ganglion*; *colon*, *i n* — the *colon*; *encephalon*, *i n* — *brain splanchnon*, *i n* — *viscera*; *organon*, *i n* — *organ*, part of the body; *pharmacon*, *i n* — *medicine*, *drug*

§ 73. Word-building. The most important suffixes of nouns of I–II declensions

1) The suffixes -ul, -cul, -ol + noun base — diminutive meaning: *radicula*, *ae f* — *small root* (from *radix*, *icis f* — *root*);

ramulus, *i m* — *small branch* (from *ramus*, *i m* — *branch*).

2) The suffix — ur + verb base — the result of action: *mixtura*, *ae f* (from the verb *miscere* — *to mix*).

3) The suffix -in-a + noun base — art, occupation: *medicina*, *ae f* — *medicinal art* (from *medicus*, *i m* — *physician*, *doctor*).

§ 74. Exercises

1. *Translate into Latin coordinating the adjective with the noun:*

The *ventricle* (*right*, *left*), the *muscle* (*oblique*, *transverse*, *straight*), the *septum* (*osseal*, *transverse*), the *eye* (*right*, *left*), the *palate* (*hard*, *bony*), *upper* (*lip*, *branch*, *angle*), *lower* (*tubercle*, *ligament*).

2. *Use the table of endings of nouns of I–II declensions and translate the following terms into Latin, form Gen. plur.:*

Oblique lines, *thoracic vertebrae*, *mental spine*, *authentic ribs*, *nasal crests*, *horisontal plates*, *fossae of the lacrimal glands*, *mastoid notches*, *clinoid crests*, *jugular notches*, *temporal fossa*, *transverse sutures*.

3. *Form nouns with diminutive meaning with suffixes -ul, -ol, -cul and translate them:*

cella, *ae f* — *cell*

fovea, *ae f* — *pit*

pars, *partis f* — *part*

saccus, *i m* — *sac*

fossa, *ae f* — *fossa*

auris, *is f* — *ear*

caput, *itis n* — *head*

malleus, *i m* — *hammer*

fons, fontis *m* — spring
corpus, oris *n* — body

canalis, is *m* — canal

§ 75. Self-control task

1. Fill in the blanks:

1. The I declension consists of nouns of ... gender and they have the ending ... in Nom. sing. and the ending ... in Gen. sing.
2. The nouns of Greek origin of the I declension of ... gender have the ending ... in Nom. sing. and ... in Gen. sing.
3. The suffixes ... have the diminutive meaning.
4. The adjectives with the ending ... are also declined by I declension.
5. The nouns and adjectives with the ending ... in Nom. sing. for the masculine gender and the ending ... for the neuter gender are related to the II declension.
6. The peculiarity of the neuter gender is the ending ... in ... case of ... number.
7. The latinized words of Greek origin of II declension have the ending ... in Nom. sing., they are nouns of ... gender. In Nom. plur. they will have the ending

§ 76. Exercises to determine the accomplishment of the aim of the class

1. Translate into Latin:

Midline, sternal line, posterior axillary lines, upper part of the abdomen, middle part, lower part, palm, back, fingers, dorsum of foot, toes, vertebral column, inferior articular facet, lateral masses, superior articular facet, thoracic vertebrae, costal facets, transverse tubercles of the sacrum, fibrous ring, anterior longitudinal ligament, interspinous ligaments, greater wings, infratemporal crest, radiate ligament of the joint of the head of a rib.

2. Translate into English:

Alae minores, spina ossis sphenoidalis, lamina medialis, fissura pterygoidea, sulcus caroticus, rostrum sphenoidale, aperturae sinus sphenoidalis, septum sinuum sphenoidalium, fissura orbitalis superior, cranium viscerale, ligamenta intertransversaria, ligamenta sacrococcygea lateralia, ligamentum flavum, membrana atlantoccipitalis anterior, ligamenta alaria, angulus costae, musculus scalenus anterior, labyrinthi ethmoidales, conchae nasales superior and media, concha nasalis suprema, palatum osseum, linea obliqua, fossa digastrica, collum mandibulae, sutura squamosa, fossa cranii posterior, septum nasi osseum, membrana intercostalis externa.

§ 77. Repeat the nouns of I and II declensions:

Declinatio prima et secunda

medicina, *ae f* — medicine
lingua, *ae f* — tongue
lingua Latina — Latin language
disciplina, *ae f* — science
columna, *ae f* — column
vertebra, *ae f* — vertebra
scapula, *ae f* — scapula
calvaria, *ae f* — cranial vault
incisura, *ae f* — notch
cellula, *ae f* — cell
mandibula, *ae f* — lower jaw
maxilla, *ae f* — upper jaw
tibia, *ae f* — tibia
spina, *ae* — crest
substantia, *ae f* — substance
tela, *ae f* — tissue
fibula, *ae f* — fibula
mucosa, *ae f* — mucous membrane
tunica, *ae f* — membrane
urethra, *ae f* — urethra
conjunctiva, *ae f* — conjunctiva
vena, *ae f* — vein
vena portae — portal vein
valvula, *ae f* — valve
squama, *ae f* — scale
fascia, *ae f* — fascia
sutura, *ae f* — suture
musculus, *i m* — muscle
humerus, *i m* — humerus
sulcus, *i m* — furrow (sulcus)
cavum, *i n* — cavity

morbus, *i m* — disease
oculus, *i m* — eye
nasus, *i m* — nose
nucleus, *i m* — nucleus
gyrus, *i m* — gyrus
nervus, *i m* — nerve
radius, *i m* — radius
truncus, *i m* — trunk
digitus, *i m* — finger
bronchus, *i m* — bronchus
stomachus, *i m* — stomach
ramus, *i m* — ramus, branch
angulus, *i m* — angle
cubitus, *i m* — elbow
oesophagus, *i m* — esophagus, gullet
locus, *i m* — place
ventriculus, *i m* — ventricle
capitulum, *i n* — small head
collum, *i n* — neck
septum, *i n* — septum
cranium, *i n* — skull
sternum, *i n* — breastbone
manubrium, *i n* — manubrium
ligamentum, *i n* — ligament
cerebrum, *i n* — brain
cerebellum, *i n* — cerebellum
brachium, *i n* — upper arm
antebrachium, *i n* — forearm
atrium, *i n* — atrium
tuberculum, *i n* — tubercle

Lesson 10

**The nouns of the III declension:
gender signs and characters of bases.**

**The nouns of the III declension
of the masculine gender in the anatomical
terminology. Word-building of the nouns of the
masculine gender in the III declension _____**

Aim: 1) *To know* the peculiarities of the III declension, gender signs and characteristic bases of the nouns of the masculine gender

2) *To be able to* determine the gender and character of the base of the nouns of the III declension: to coordinate the adjectives of I–II groups with the nouns of the masculine gender in Nom. sing. and Gen. sing and plur.; to form the Latin names of the muscles and their functions

§ 78. The main peculiarities of the nouns of the III declension

The III declension consists of the nouns of all three genders which have the ending *-is* in Gen. sing. The endings are different in Nom. sing. The base of Nom. and Gen. Case does not coincide in most nouns. The dictionary form of such words have the final part of the base before the ending *-is*. *E.g.*, apex, apicis (the base is apic-), valetudo, valetudinis (the base is valetudin-).

These words can't be declined without knowing the base in Gen. sing. One-component words are written in complete form in Gen. sing. *E.g.*, pes, pedis *m*; dens, dentis *m*. The nouns of the III declension may be equally compound (canalis, is *m*) and nonequally compound (pars, partis *f*) depending upon the number of syllables in Nom. and Gen. sing.

N.B. To define the gender it is important to be able to distinguish equally and nonequally compound nouns of the III declension. The example of the dictionary form of the III declension: pulmo, onis *m*; vox, vocis *f*; foramen, inis *n*.

Determination of the base	base
Nom. os, Gen. oss -is	oss-
Nom. pars, Gen. part -is	part-
Nom. cervix, Gen. cervic -is	cervic-
Nom. hepar, Gen. hepat -is	hepat-

There are exceptions as to the gender among the nouns of the III declension. For example, the nouns with the ending *-is* are of the feminine gender, but the noun *canalis*, is *m* — canal; *sanguis*, *inis m* — blood are of the masculine gender; the nouns with the ending *-os* are of the masculine gender, but *os*, *ossis n* — bone; *os*, *oris n* — mouth are of the neuter gender. The words belonging to this or that gender as exceptions should be remembered.

§ 79. Exercise

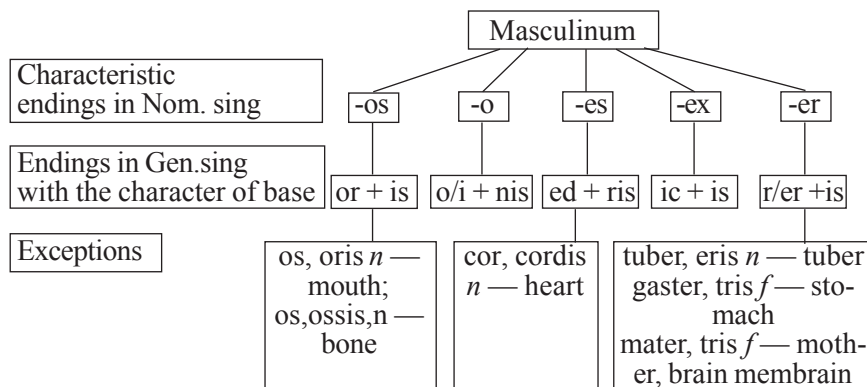
Define the base of the nouns and point out equally compound and nonequally compound nouns:

Vas, *vasis n*; *radix*, *icis f*; *auscultatio*, *onis f*; *pars*, *partis f*; *cor*, *cordis n*; *crus*, *cruris n*; *regio*, *onis f*; *foramen*, *inis n*; *lac*, *lactis n*; *trauma*, *atis n*; *axis*, *is m*, *cutis*, *is f*; *basis*, *is f*, *cartilago*, *inis f*; *os*, *ossis n*.

§ 80. Control questions

1. What is the characteristic sign. of the nouns of the III declension?
2. What peculiarity is observed in most nouns of the III declension comparing the forms in Nom. sing. and Gen. sing.?
3. What is the peculiarity of the dictionary form of most of the nouns of the III declension in comparison with the dictionary form of other declensions?
4. How is the base of the nouns of the III declension defined?
5. What nouns are called equally compound and nonequally compound?
6. What nouns are related to the masculine gender of the III declension? What endings are characteristic of them?
7. What exceptions are there in the masculine gender of the III declension?
8. What suffixes are used to make up the names of muscles according to their functions?

§ 81. The nouns of the masculine gender of the III declension



Explanations to the table:

1) The sign of the masculine gender of the III declension is endings -os, -or, -o, -er, -ex, -es (for nonequally compound nouns).

2) The definite ending in Nom. sing. as a rule corresponds to the character of the noun base which is disclosed in Gen. sing. These correspondences and exceptions from gender rules should be remembered.

§ 82. Exercises

1. *According to the endings in Nom. sing. form Gen. sing. and define the base:*

Sphincter, dens, canalis, venter, liquor, flos, pollex, pulmo, dolor, carbo, depressor, cortex, vertex, gaster, mater, paries, herpes, homo.

2. *Define the base of the nouns, form Nom. plur. and translate into English:*

Tendo, tendinis *m*; margo, marginis *m*; extensor, extensoris *m*; pes, pedis *m*; stapes, stapedis *m*; apex, apicis *m*; cortex, corticis *m*; paries, parietis *m*; index, indicis *m*; hallux, hallucis *m*; pollex, pollicis *m*.

3. *Make morphological analysis of the terms and translate them into English:*

Musculus flexor hallucis longus, articulationes interphalangeae pedis, musculus levator scapulae, tuber calcanei, vagina synovialis tendinis, vaginae fibrosae tendinum, musculi levatores costarum, musculus erector spinae, musculus transversus thoracis, musculi intertransversales laterales lumborum, venter anterior musculi digastrici, musculi laterales abdominis.

4. *Read the text, choose the anatomical terms and translate them into Latin:*

Muscles of the foot

The dorsal muscles. The extensor digitorum brevis muscle lies on the dorsal surface of the foot under the extensor digitorum longus tendons. The abductor hallucis muscle is the closest to the surface on the media border of the sole.

The flexor hallucis brevis muscle adjoins the lateral border of the above described muscle. The adductor hallucis muscle lies deeply and consists of two heads.

5. *Coordinate the adjectives in brackets with the nouns and translate them:*

Cor (adiposus, a, um), os (zygomaticus, a, um), canalis (vertebralis, e), mater (pius, a, um; durus, a, um), tuber (ischadicus, a, um), venter (anterior, ius), trochanter (major, ius, minor, us), paries (medialis, e; lateralis, e), dens (incisivus, a, um).

§ 83. Word-building of the nouns of the III declension of the masculine gender

The suffix *-or* forms the nouns denoting condition or the object doing some action. These nouns are formed from the verbal base of supinum.

For example: dolor, doloris *m* — pain; calor, caloris *m* — fever; rubor, ruboris *m* — redness; doctor, doctoris *m* — teacher; receptor, receptoris *m* — receptor.

There are a lot of such names of muscles in myology. They reflect a function which the muscle fulfils (lowering, rotation). Depending upon the final consonant of the verbal base which the suffix *-or* is added to, the terms may end in *-tor*, *-xor*: rotator, tensor, flexor.

The Latin terms — the names of the muscles according to their function — consist of two nouns: I — *musculus*, II — the noun of the III declension of the masculine gender with the suffix *-or*. The number and case of these two nouns always coincide.

For example:

Nom. sing.

musculus supinator

Gen. sing.

musculi supinatoris.

N.B. The nouns depending upon the names of the muscles according to their function are always in Genetivus in the Latin verbose term. *For example*, *musculus levator scapulae* — the muscle raising the scapula.

§ 84. Exercises to check whether the aim of the class is achieved

1. *Translate the following terms, define the gender of the nouns of the III declension:*

Musculus levator, cortex cerebelli, os frontale, atrium cordis, homo sapiens, paries occipitalis, pia mater, tuber frontale, apex pulmonis.

2. *Translate into English:*

1) *Notae inflammationis sunt quattuor (four): rubor et tumor cum calore et dolore.* 2) *In corpore hominis varii musculi sunt; musculi abductores, adductores, flexores, extensores, levatores, depressores et cetera.* 3) *Hippocrates, doctor medicinae antiquus, auctor multorum de medicina librorum.* 4) *Medicina disciplina magni laboris est.*

3. *Translate into Latin:*

Mesentery of the tendon, rhomboid major and minor muscles, levator scapulae muscle, levatores costarum muscles, levatores costarum long muscles, rectus abdominal muscle, transverse fascia of the abdomen, inguinal canal, depressor muscle of the angle of the mouth, depressor muscle of the inferior lip, buccinator muscle, levator muscle of the superior lip, orbicular

muscle, pronator teres muscle, abductor hallucis muscle, extensor muscle of the little finger.

4. *Translate into English the names of the muscles according to their function:*

Musculus psoas major, musculus iliopsoas, musculus pronator teres, musculus teres minor (major), musculus flexor digitorum superficialis, musculus flexor carpi ulnaris, chiasma tendinum, musculus flexor pollicis longus, musculus extensor carpi radialis longus, musculus extensor pollicis brevis, musculus extensor indicis, musculus opponens pollicis, musculus abductor digiti minimi, musculi interossei dorsales, musculi interossei palmares, retinaculum extensorum, vaginae tendinum, canalis radialis, musculus psoas minor, musculus adductor brevis, musculus adductor magnus, tendo calcaneus, musculus flexor hallucis longus.

§ 85. Vocabulary

musculus abductor — approaching

musculus tensor — straining

musculus adductor — leading to

musculus corrugator — wrinkling

musculus buccinator — buccal

musculus cremaster — raising

the testicle

musculus constrictor — constricting

musculus dilatator — dilating

musculus depressor — lowering

musculus extensor — unbending

musculus levator — raising

musculus flexor — bending

musculus masseter — chewing

musculus pronator — pronator

musculus rotator — rotating

musculus supinator — supinator

Lesson 11

The nouns of the feminine gender of the III declension. The III declension of Greek nouns

Aim: 1) *To know* the sign of the gender and characteristic bases of the nouns of the feminine gender

2) *To be able to* determine the gender and character of the noun base of the feminine gender, coordinate the adjectives with the nouns in Nom. and Gen. sing. and plur.

§ 86. For individual work

1. *Read the text, choose the anatomical terms and translate them into Latin:*

The elbow joint

Flexion: muscles biceps brachii, muscles brachialis, muscles brachioradialis and muscles pronator teres.

Extension: muscles triceps brachii and muscles anconeus.

Pronation: muscles pronator teres and muscles pronator quadratus. Muscles brachioradialis which sets the forearm into a position intermediate between pronation and supination also contributes to this movement. The joints of the fingers. Abduction of the thumb: muscles abductor pollicis longus and muscles abductor pollicis brevis. Adduction of the thumb: muscles adductor pollicis.

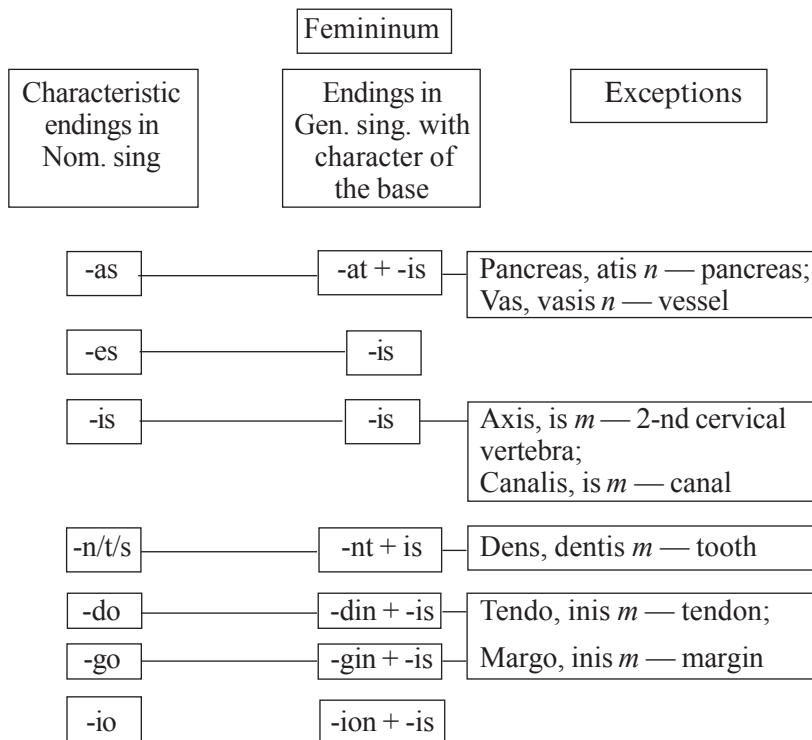
2. *Translate into Latin, write down in the dictionary form, point out the base of the following words:*

Margin, person, lung, flower, root, mouth, bone, apex, foot, heart.

3. *Translate the following terms, point out the gender of the nouns in III declension and put them into Gen. sing. (orally):*

Dura mater encephali, os nasale, paries occipitalis, cor sanum, musculus depressor septi nasi, nervus cutaneus pedis, musculus delatator, musculus pronator quadratus, musculus psoas minor, margo linguae, canalis pyloricus, sphincter, pulmo sinister, apex pulmonis, margo anterior, hilus pulmonis.

§ 87. The nouns of the feminine gender



Explanations to the figure:

1. The sign of the feminine gender of the III declension is characteristic endings in Nom. sing.: **-s**, **-x** with different vowels and consonants (except **-os**, **-es**) and **-us**, **-do**, **-go**, **-io**.

2. The definite ending in Nom. sing corresponds to the definite character of the base which is disclosed in Gen. sing.

3. Attention should be paid to the gender of the words which are exception. The following words as exceptions are related to the masculine gender: fornix, icis *m* — vault; inguis, is *m* — the nail; mons, montis *m* — eminence; pons, pontis *n* — bridge; hallux, ucis *m* — toe.

4. The nonequally compound nouns ending in **-as**, have the base ending **-at**: immunitas, atis (the base immunitat) — immunity. The nonequally compound nouns which end in **-is**, have the base ending **-id**: iris, idis *f* — the base irid — iris of the eye. The equally compound nouns have the same base in Nom. and Gen. sing.: auris, is *f* — the ear.

§ 88. Exercises

1. Use the table of ending of the feminine gender and form Gen. sing. of the following words and define their base:

-as: tuberositas — tuberosity; cavitas — cavity; immunitas — immunity; universitas — totality;

-us: juvenus — youth; salus — health; senectus — senility, old-age;

-x: cervix — the neck; lux — light; calx — heel;

-io: curatio — treatment; functio — function; solutio — solution; flexio — bending; rotatio — rotation;

-do: latitudo — width; longitudo — length; valetudo — health;

-go: origo — origin; mucilago — mucus; virgo — girl.

2. Coordinate the adjectives with the nouns and put the formed term into Gen. sing.:

Vessel (lymph, blood, capillary); canal (visual, lacrimal, facial); joint (complex, simple, transverse); root (lateral, median); margin (frontal, squamous, upper); tuberosity (deltoid, iliac).

§ 89. The nouns of the III declension of the feminine gender of Greek origin

The latinized Greek nouns are declined by the III declension: a) the nouns of the feminine gender ending in *-is*, equally compound: *dosis*, *is f* — dose; *diagnosis*, *is f* — diagnosis;

b) the nouns of the feminine gender ending in *-is*, nonequally compound: *iris*, *iridis f* — iris of the eye;

c) the nouns ending in *-itis*, *-itidis*: *pleuritis*, *itidis f* — pleurisy.

Remember the words of Greek origin with the ending **-is** in anatomical terminology:

basis, *is f* — base

symphysis, *is f* — symphysis

epiphysis, *is f* — upper or lower end of the bone, epiphysis

diaphysis, *is f* — the middle part of the tubular bone, diaphysis

syndesmosis, *is f* — junction by connective tissue, syndesmosis

synchondrosis, *is f* — cartilaginous joint, synchondrosis

anastomosis, *is f* — anastomosis

§ 90. Word-building. The most important suffixes of the feminine gender of the III declension

1. The suffix **-itis** forms the nouns denoting inflammatory process: *encephalitis*, *idis f* — encephalitis, inflammation of the brain (from *encephalon* — brain).

2. The suffixes **-osis**, **-iasis** form the nouns denoting the names of the diseases of noninflammatory character, painful state connected with exceeding of the norms in the organism: monocytosis, is *f*— increase of the number of lymphocytes in the blood (from monocytus); amoebiasis, is *f*— from amoeba.

3. The suffix **-io** forms the nouns denoting action or the result of action; functions performed by muscles: flexio — bending, extensio — unbending.

§ 91. Self-control

Fill in the blanks:

1. The signs of the feminine gender are endings ... in Nom. sing.
2. By using the suffix **-io** the nouns with the meaning ... are formed.
3. The suffix **-itis** denotes ... process.
4. The suffix **-osis** denotes ... process.
5. As exceptions the nouns ... are related to the neuter gender and ... to the masculine gender.
6. The ending **-um** in Gen. plur. is characteristic of the nouns with the base ending in ... consonant.
7. The ending **-um** in Gen. plur. is characteristic of the nouns with the base ending in ... consonants and the adjectives of ... group.

§ 92. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the class is achieved

1. *Explain the meaning of the terms, point out the suffixes and translate them:*

Acidosis, is *f*; hyperthyreosis, is *f*; leucocytosis, is *f*; mononucleosis, is *f*; nephrolithiasis, is *f*; arthrosis, is *f*; monocytosis, is *f*; abductio, onis *f*; rotatio, onis *f*; supinatio, onis *f*; pronatio, onis *f*.

2. *Make up the nouns denoting inflammatory processes in the organism, translate them:*

Pleura, ae *f*; meninx, ngis *f*; hepar, atis *n*; colon, coli *n*; gaster, gastris *f*; stoma, atis *n*; enteron, i *n*; trachea, ae *f*; encephalon, i *n*; arteria, ae *f*; pulpa, ae *f*; bronchus, i *m*; larynx, ngis *f*.

3. *Translate the following terms, form Nom. plur.:*

Tuberositas deltoidea, cavitas glenoidalis, tuberositas ulnae, tuberositas radii seu apophysis, pars petrosa, extremitas lateralis, phalanx proximalis, regio frontalis, cartilago thyreoidea, impressio digitata, pyramis medullae oblongatae, glandula parotis accessoria, radix pulmonis, cortex lentis, basis phalangis mediae, cartilago alaris major, margo uteri dexter, cartilago nasi, pars libera gingivae, dura mater spinalis, radix nervi, radix medialis, tractus opticus, pyramis vermis, pars centralis ventriculi, appendix vermiformis.

4. Translate into Latin:

Internal carotid artery, common carotid artery, apex of the lung, root of the lung, abdominal part, saddle joint, ball-and-socket joint plane, joints, adduction, abduction, rotation, circumduction, flexion, extension, medullary cavity, joint cavity, articular cartilage, sternocostal joints, joints of the heads of ribs, trigeminal impression, orbital parts, digitate impressions, nasal part, upper surface of the base of the skull, acromial end, glenoid cavity, tuberosity of the ulna, the joints of the hand, hip joint base of the patella.

§ 93. Vocabulary

appendix, *icis f*— appendage

mens, *mentis f*— intellect

arteria carotis, *tidis f*— carotid artery

pars, *partis f*— part

articulatio, *onis f*— articulation, joint

pelvis, *is f*— pelvis

auris, *is f*— ear

pyramis, *idis f*— pyramid

cavitas, *atis f*— cavity

regio, *onis f*— region

cervix, *icis f*— neck

impressio, *onis f*— impression

cutis, *is f*— skin

bilis, *is f*— bile

lens, *lentis f*— lens

extremitas, *atis f*— end, extremity

meninx, *ngis f*— meninx

epiglottis, *itidis f*— epiglottis

radix, *icis f*— roof

rotatio, *onis f*— rotation

auscultatio, *onis f*— auscultation

extensio, *onis f*— unbending

palpatio, *onis f*— palpation

abductio, *onis f*— drawing aside

Lesson 12

The nouns of the neuter gender of the III declension ---

Aim: 1) *To know* the signs of the gender and characteristic bases of the nouns of the neuter gender of the III declension

2) *To be able to* define the gender and character of the base of the nouns of the neuter gender, to coordinate the adjectives with the nouns of the neuter gender in Nom. and Gen. sing. and plur.; to translate from English into Latin and from Latin into English compound anatomical terms

§ 94. For individual work

1. Translate into Latin:

Adductor hallucis muscle, extensor hallucis brevis muscle, false pelvis, true pelvis, hip bone, metacarpophalangeal joints, middle phalanx, smaller multangular bone.

2. Form Nom. and Gen. plur.:

Dens premolaris, pars dorsalis pontis, pars endocrinia pancreatis, corpus pancreatis, margo inferior pulmonis sinistri, margo lateralis pedis, symphysis pubica, arteria carotis communis, vas capillare, cavitas thoracis, corpus striatum, formatio reticularis, cortex renis, apex pulmonis.

3. Read the text, choose the anatomical terms and translate them into Latin:

The Metacarpus

The metacarpus consists of five bones. Metacarpus bones, which are related in type to short tubular bones with one true epiphysis and are numbered in sequence, beginning with the thumb: first, second, third, fourth and fifth. Each carpal bone has a base, diaphysis and rounded head. The base of the first metacarpal has a saddle-shaped articular surface receiving the trapezium bone, and there are no facies on the sides.

§ 95. Nouns of the neuter gender of the III declension

Neutrum		
Characteristic endings in Nom. sing.	Endings in Gen. sing with character of the base	Exceptions
-en	-in + -is	Ren, renis <i>m</i> — kidney; Lien, lienis <i>m</i> — spleen
-ma	-at + -is	
-ut	-it + -is	
-e	-is	
-l	ll/-al + -is	

Explanations to the figure:

1. The signs of the neuter gender of the III declension are endings in Nom. sing: **-en, -us, -ur, -ma, -l, -ar, -ut**.
2. The ending in Nom. sing corresponds to a definite character of the base in Gen. sing.
3. One should distinguish the Latin nouns of the neuter gender ending in **-e** and the nouns of Greek origin of the feminine gender ending in **-e**: rete, is *n* — net; raphe, es *f* — suture.
4. One should also distinguish the nouns of Greek origin of the neuter gender of the III declension and the nouns of the feminine gender ending in **-ma** (Latin) of the I declension: stroma, atis *n* — stroma; squama, ae *f* — scale.

§ 96. Exercises

1. Use the table of endings of the nouns of the neuter gender and form Gen. sing., define the base.

Ending -en (inis): abdomen — abdomen; semen — sperm; nomen — name.

Ending -ur (oris): femur — thigh; jecur — liver.

Ending -ur (uris): sulfur — sulfur.

Ending -us (oris): pectus — chest; tempus — time.

Ending -us (eris): ulcus — ulcer; viscus — viscera.

Ending -us (uris): pus — pus.

Ending -e (is): rete — net; ile — abdominal cavity.

Ending -ar (aris); calcar — spur, the name of one of the brain gyri.

2. *Translate into Latin coordinating the adjective with the noun:*

Left thigh, callous body (in sing. and plur.), external opening, visual opening (in sing. and plur.), nutrition opening (in sing. and plur.), nervous system, arterial net, occipital opening, frontal tuber, pineal body.

3. *Define the base of the following nouns and form Nom. plur. and Gen. plur.:*

Chiasma, atis *n*; foramen, inis *n*; crus, cruris *n*; abdomen, inis *n*; caput, itis *n*; femur, oris. *n*; occiput, itis *n*; corpus, oris *n*; rete, is *n*; trauma, atis *n*; animal, is *n*; femur, oris *n*.

4. *Translate into English, make morphological analysis of the terms:*

1) Fossa cranii sella turcica formatur. 2) Foramina fossae cranii mediae sunt: canalis opticus, fissura orbitalis superior, foramen rotundum, foramen ovale, foramen spinosum. 3) Foramina fossae cranii posterioris sunt: foramen magnum, canalis nervi hypoglossi, foramen jugulare, incisura jugularis, foramen mastoideum, porus acusticus internus. 4) Complexus ossium corporis sceleton vocatur. 5) Forma et magnitudines ossa diversa sunt: ossa longa, lata, brevia. 6) Tibia est os longum, scapula — os latum, vertebra — os breve. 7) In ossibus distinguimus corpus ossis et extremitates. 8) In osse foramina nutritia sunt. 9) Cor centrum systematis sanguiferi est. 10) Vasa sanguifera in venas, arterias et capilarias dividuntur, sunt etiam vasa vasorum et nervorum.

§ 97. The endings of Genetivus pluralis

Remember the endings of Gen. plur. of the nouns of the III declension and adjectives of the II group: **-um** (nouns with the base ending in one consonant); **-ium** (nouns with the base ending in two consonants, equally compound with the endings -is, -es, nouns ending in -e, -al, -ar, adjectives of the II group).

The noun vas — vessel is related to the neuter gender as an exception and it is declined in singular by III declension and in plural by II declension: vas, vasis *n* (plur. vasa, vasorum).

Remember the terms:

Nom. sing.

vas sanguiferum — blood vessel:

vas lymphaticum — lymph vessel:

Nom. plur.

vasa sanguifera — blood vessels:

vasa lymphatica — lymph vessels:

vasa vasorum — vessels of the vessels, this term is used to denote capillaries.

Gen. sing.

vasis sanguiferi

vasis lymphatici

Gen. plur.

vasorum sanguiferorum

vasorum lymphaticorum

§ 98. Exercises

1. Define the gender of the noun by the endings in *Nom.* and *Gen. sing.* and character of the base. Take into account the exceptions of the rules:

Rete, is — net; hepar, atis — liver; vertex, icis — apex, top; frons, frontis — forehead; pars, partis — part; systema, atis — system; flexio, onis — bending; calor, oris — fever; venter, ventris — abdomen; homo, hominis — human; sphincter, eris — sphincter; paries, etis — wall; dens, dentis — tooth; ars, artis — art; calx, calcis — heel; extremitas, atis — extremity; ren, renis — kidney; vulnus, eris — wound; pes, pedis — foot; infas, infantis — child; pus, puris — pus; sanguis, sanguinis — blood; foramen, inis — foramen; os, ossis — bone; os, oris — mouth; mater, tris — the brain membrane; meninx, gis — brain membrane; fornix, icis — vault; fel, fellis — bile; cor, cordis — heart.

2. Translate and put the terms into *Nom.* and *Gen. plur.*:

Cribrate opening, articulatory surface, zygomatic process, transverse muscle, visual nerve, pulmonary vein, nucleus of the cranial nerve, sinus of the carotid veins, vessel nerves, blood vessel, lateral adhesion of the eyelids, septum of the frontal sinuses, chiasm of tendons.

§ 99. Self-control

Fill in the blanks:

1. The signs of the neuter gender are the endings
2. The noun *rete* has ... gender, the noun *rapho* has ... gender.
3. The noun *forma* has ... declension of ... gender, and the noun *derma* has ... declension, ... gender, they are distinguished by their ... form.
4. The exceptions of the masculine gender are

§ 100. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the class is achieved

1. Translate into English:

Corpus ulnae, caput ulnae, tuberculum ossis scaphoidei, corpus ossis ischii, pecten ossis pubis, foramen mastoideum, foramen zygomatico-orbitale, foramina sacralia anteriora pelvica, foramina venarum minimarum, os metacarpale tertium, fovea capitis femoris, os cuneiforme mediale, ossa sesamoidea, foramina palatina minora, tuber frontale, foramen magnum.

2. Translate into Latin:

Lymphatic system, efferent lymphatic vessels, anastomosis between afferent and efferent vessels, hypophysis cerebri, mamillary bodies, external and internal carotid arteries, the bones of the fingers, capital bone, medio-carpal joint, pisiform joint, ischial tuberosity, pubic symphysis, greater trochanter, lesser trochanter, hip joint, apex of the head, lateral and medial semilunar cartilages, spongy bones, metatarsal bones, navicular bone, cuboid bone, lumbal part, flexor carpi radialis muscle, flexor pollicis longus muscle, extensor carpi radialis longus, extensor indicis muscle, common synovial sheath of the flexor tendons, synovial sheath of the long flexor muscle of the thumb, psoas major muscle, tensor fasciae latae muscle, biceps femor muscle, oblique head, vascular part, femoral canals, deciduous tooth, apical foramen, tooth pulp, root canal, incisor tooth, canine tooth, abdominal cavity, pelvic cavity, body of the stomach, anterior wall, cardiac portion, vermiform process, accessory pancreas, cricoid cartilago, inlet of the larynx, hilum of the lung, root of the lung.

§ 101. Vocabulary

albumen, inis *n* — albumin

alumen, inis *n* — alumen

abdomen, inis *n* — abdomen

animal, is *n* — animal

fel, fellis *n* — bile

hepar, hepatis *n* — liver (in anatomical and clinical terminology)

jecur, oris *n* — liver in pharmacy

lac, lactis *n* — milk

oedema, atis *n* — edema

pectus, oris *n* — chest

pus, puris *n* — pus

rete, is *n* — net

corpus, oris *n* — body

foramen, inis *n* — opening, foramen

occiput, itis *n* — back of the head

tempus, oris *n* — temple

femur, oris *n* — thigh

zygoma, atis *n* — zygoma

glomus, eris *n* — bundle

systema, atis *n* — system

viscus, eris *n* — viscera

chiasma, atis *n* — chiasm

Lesson 13

The nouns of the IV–V declensions in the medical terminology

Aim: 1) *To know* the signs of the gender and characteristic bases of the nouns of the IV–V declensions

2) *To be able* to determine the gender and the character of the base, to coordinate adjectives with the nouns of the IV–V declensions in Nom. and Gen. sing. and plur

§ 102. The nouns of the IV declension in the medical terminology

The IV declension consists of the nouns of the masculine and neuter gender having the ending -us in Gen. sing. The nouns of the masculine gender have the ending **-us** and the nouns of the neuter gender have the ending **-u** in Nom. sing.

For example: processes, us *m* — process; genu, us *n* — knee. As an exception: — manus, us *f* — hand is of the feminine gender, “u” is a characteristic vowel of this declension.

There are a lot of exceptions in anatomical and physiological and clinical terms.

§ 103. Exercises

1. *Determine the declension and gender of the nouns taking into consideration the ending of Gen. sing. and rules of genders:*

condylus, i — condyle	pectus, oris — chest
cubitus, i — elbow	tempus, oris — time
pulsus, us — pulse	abscessus, us — abscess
usus, us — experience	virus, i — virus
ulcus, eris — ulcer	viscus, eris — viscera

2. *Complete the dictionary form of the following nouns, determine the declension and the base:*

Locus, arcus, visus, angulus, ulcus, partus, nasus, corpus, casus, manus, nervus, ramus, processus, medicus, meatus.

3. *Translate into English, form Nom. plur.:*

Hiatus aorticus, cornu superius, ligamentum transversum genus, hiatus saphenus, textus epithelialis, tractus iliotalibialis, cornu inferius, bursa sinus tarsi, meatus nasi communis, processus coracoideus scapulae, palma manus, arcus palatoglossus, recessus piriformis.

4. *Translate, coordinate the adjectives with nouns:*

Present state, auditory meatus, frequent pulse, frontal sinus (and Nom. plur.), articulatory process (and Nom. plur.), coccygeal horn, aqueduct of the cochlea, appearance of the patient, upper duct of the nose; hook of the pterygoid process, foramen of the clinoid sinus, common hepatic duct, anterior arch.

5. *Fill in the missing endings:*

Hiatus esophage... , processus styloide... , cornu inferi... , textus epithelial... , cornu superi... , manus sinistr... , sinus sphenoidal... , ductus parotide... , arcus inferi... , status praesen... .

§ 104. The V declension of nouns

The V declension consists of the nouns of the feminine gender which have the ending **-ei** in Gen. sing. and **-es** — in Nom.

For example: facies, *ei f* — face; rabies, *ei f* — rabies.

In medical terminology the nouns of V declension are rare.

Remember them:

facies, *ei f* — face

series, *ei f* — series

superfacies, *ei f* — surface

macies, *ei f* — cachexia

res, *ei f* — thing

scabies, *ei f* — scabies

caries, *ei f* — caries

species, *ei f* — species

durities, *ei f* — hardness

rabies, *ei f* — rabies

canities, *ei f* — grey hair

sanies, *ei f* — sanies

Translate into English:

1. Manus faciem dorsalem et faciem volarem habet.

2. Facies articulares ossium cartilagine articulari tectae sunt.

3. Facies maribundi a medicis facies Hippocratica interdum nominatur.

4. Caries dentium saepe suppurationem et abscessus efficit.

5. In facie ossis occipitalis externa protuberantia occipitalis externa, in facie interna seu cerebri protuberantia interna locata sunt.

6. Sunt dies critici morborum gravium; post diem criticum calor cito cadit.

7. In superficie cutis epidermis sita est.

8. Caput in cranium et faciem dividitur.

9. Facies dividitur in maxillam superiorem et inferiorem.
10. Superficies superior est convexa, inferior vero concava.
11. In facie pelvina ossis sacri foramina sacralia anteriora, in facie dorsali foramina sacralia posteriora sita sunt.
12. Ductus biliferi fel in ductu hepatico colligunt.
13. Habitus phthisicis et habitus apoplecticus saepe symptomata status dolorosi sunt.
14. Sunt varia partes in cavitate nasi: meatus nasalis superior, meatus nasalis medius, meatus nasalis inferior, recessus spheno-ethmoidalis.
15. Partes ossis frontalis sunt: arcus superficialis, facies temporalis, processus zygomaticus, facies interna, sulcus sinus sagittalis superioris, facies orbitalis, sinus frontalis, apertura sinus frontalis.
16. Os hyoideum ex corpore ossis hyoidei, cornu minore et cornu maiore constat. Atlas faciem articulem superiorem et faciem articulem inferiorem.

§ 105. Vocabulary

ductus , us <i>m</i> — duct	motus , us <i>m</i> — motion
fructus , us <i>m</i> — fruit	processus , us <i>m</i> — process
sinus , us <i>m</i> — sinus	cornu , us <i>n</i> — horn
abscessus , us, <i>m</i> — abscess	plexus , us <i>m</i> — plexus
meatus , us <i>m</i> — meatus	spiritus , us <i>m</i> — spirit
status , us <i>m</i> — situation, state	arcus , us <i>m</i> — arch
tractus , us <i>m</i> — tract	pulsus , us <i>m</i> — knock, pulse
casus , us <i>m</i> — case	recessus , us <i>m</i> — pouch
artus , us <i>m</i> — articulation	olfactus , us <i>m</i> — olfaction
lapsus , us <i>m</i> — mistake	auditus , us <i>m</i> — hearing
hiatus , us <i>m</i> — fissure	visus , us <i>m</i> — vision
collapsus , us <i>m</i> — collapse	gustus , us <i>m</i> — taste
foetus , us <i>m</i> — fetus	textus , us <i>m</i> — tissue
situs , us <i>m</i> — position	tactus , us <i>m</i> — taction
usus , us <i>m</i> — use	sensus , us <i>m</i> — sensation

Lesson 14

Individual preparation for the final control on the anatomical terminology _____

Aim: 1) *To repeat* the material of the lessons

2) *To be able to* coordinate adjectives with nouns of the I–V declensions in Gen. and Nom. sing. and plur.; to translate compound anatomical terms from Latin into English and from English into Latin

§ 106. Exercises. Preparation for the final test

1. *Give the dictionary form of the following words:*

Axis, branch, eyelid, sinus, bronchus, vessel, tuberosity, cheekbone, plexus, tongue, duct, intestine, ganglion, muscle, process nerve, surface, foramen, bursa, margin, pan, fissura, ligament, bone, tooth, system, horn, tubercle.

2. *Form Nom. and Gen. plur.:*

Concha nasalis, arteria gastrica dextra, processus zygomaticus, foramen ovale, vas sanguiferum, septum transversum, fissura mediana inferior, nervus oculomotorius, trigonum olfactorium, ligamentum longitudinale posterius, canalis palatinus major, nervus vagus, vena saphena, caput longum, dens molaris.

3. *Name the dictionary form of every word, translate orally, without dictionary:*

Lamina superficialis, fascia endocervicalis, spatium retroviscerale glandula pinealis, canalis inguinalis, pelvis major, linea terminalis, ligamenta sacroiliaca interossea, foramen ischiadicum majus and minus, cavum pedis, apertura pelvis superior, fovea capitis femoris, basis patellae, ligamenta cruciata genus, ossa cuneiformia, os cuboideum, sulcus tendinis musculi peronei longi, spatia interossea metatarsi, phalanges digitorum pedis, articulationes interphalangeales pedis, arteria sacralis mediana, ramus plantaris profundus, plexus venosus sacralis, venae iliaca communes, rami cutanei nervi femoralis, caput transversum, musculus abductor hallucis, musculus extensor hallucis brevis, caput obliquum, musculus flexor digitorum longus, dentes

decidui, pars laryngea, sphincter, lobuli hepatis, corpus vesicae felleae, pancreas accessorium, caput pancreatis, cauda pancreatis, ductus pancreaticus, cartilago alaris major, radix nasi, cartilago septi nasi.

4. *Translate in written form, put into Nom. and Gen. sing.:*

Cochlear nerve, optic chiasma, lymphatic vessel, occipital lymph gland, hepatic vein, vein of the spine, femoral artery, external iliac artery, visceral branch, superior phrenic artery, ascending pharyngeal artery, occipital sinus, diaphragmatic surface, right atrium, medial cerebral artery, common iliac vein, superficial inguinal gland.

5. *Coordinate the adjective with the nouns in brackets:*

Transverse (process, lobe, ligament, artery), anterior (margin, septum, surface), occipital (foramen, canal, area), carotid (canal, sulcus, tubercle), cribrate (bone, foramen, crest).

6. *Translate in written form, put the terms in Nom. plur.:*

Nasal gland, alveolar foramen, lower articulatory process, parietal bone, right suprarenal vein, phrenic veins, anterior sacral venous plexus, venous plexus, internal iliac lymph, glands, vescceral nodes, lesser occipital nerve, bronchial plexus, ganglionic branches, parietal branches.

7. *Translate into English without using the dictionary, name the dictionary form of every word:*

Margo anterior, os hyoideum nodus lymphaticus, spina nasalis posterior, colon transversum, radix vestibularis, foramen occipitale magnum, crista tuberculi minoris, fornix pharyngis, meatus externus, incisura pancreatis, dura mater encephali, lobus hepatis dexter, corpus vesicae felleae, ampulla recti, ligamentum fibulare, cornu sacrale, musculus glutaeus minor, ductus hepaticus sinister, nervus facialis, glandula lacrimalis, stratum cerebrale, musculus transversus, cavitas nasi propria, ductus sublingualis major, nervus musculi tensoris veli palatini, hiatus canalis nervi petrosi minoris, apex radiceis dentis.

8. *Translate without using the dictionary:*

Ligamentum pubicum superius, angulus subpubicus, foramen ischiadicum majus and minus, cavum pelvis, apertura pelvis inferior, facies patellaris, bursa infrapatellaris profunda, plicae alares, facies articularis navicularis, ligamenta capitis fibulae anterior and posterior, venae meningeae mediae, nervi vasorum, retinaculum tendinum musculorum flexorum, comisura palpebrarum lateralis, vaginae tendinum digitorum pedis, medulla renis, arteriae renis, rami alveolares superiores anteriores, rami parotidei, musculi peronei, foramina palatina minora, tractus spinalis nervi trigemini, corpora paraaortica, ganglia thoracica, glandula trunci sympathici, organa oculi accessoria, arteriae ciliares posteriores longae, rami tractus optici, sulcus tendinis musculi peronei longi, processus medialis tuberis calcanei.

9. *Translate orally, name the form of Nom. and Gen. sing, and plur.:*

Lower incisor, mastoid cell, great wing, intradental space, small cartilage, incisor canal, small sublingual duct, cribrate foramen, blood vessel, small horn, navicular bone, fibular joint, spongy bone, superior left colic artery, internal carotid arteries.

§ 107. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved

1. *Make morphological analysis of the terms, name the declension, gender, case and number of each word:*

Arteriae ciliares posteriores, foramina nutritia, nodi lymphatici mesenterici, arteria sacralis mediana, ductus sublinguales minores, crura ossea, vena portae, venae lumbales dextrae, vena cava inferior, cornu majus. systema lymphaticum, nodi lymphatici cervicales profundi, foramina sacralia, nervus cutaneus antebrachii lateralis, nervi tensoris tympani, cartilaginei cunifformes, cornu superius, tuberositas ossis navicularis.

2. *Translate into Latin in written form:*

Navicular bone, cuneiform bones, internal auditory meatus, venous plexus, parietal tubercle, upper cuspid, temporal line, short gastric veins, nervous pelvic nodes, cartilage notch, anterior median veins of the spinal cord, muscles of the chest, suboccipital muscles, insufficiency of the aorta valves, nuclei of the cranial nerves, additional spinal vein, knee ligaments, joint of costal head, right pulmonary veins, upper and lower wall of the orbit, oral glands, movable part of the nasal septum, lower gingival rami, blind opening of the tongue, posterior lingual gland, general hepatic duct, cervical fascia proper, *ilex* or *carpi radialis* muscle, vertebral column, cervical vertebrae, vertebra prominence, first and second cervical vertebrae, lateral masses, costal facets, transverse costal facet, lumbar and coccygeal vertebrae, alar ligaments of the odontoid process, cruciform ligament of the axis, terminal sulcus, gelatinous matter, white matter, right subclavian jugular trunk, lumbar trunks, buccal lymph glands.

4. *Translate without dictionary:*

Rami nasales posteriores, nervi pterygoidei medialis and lateralis, os zygomaticum, tunica conjunctiva palpebrarum, sinus venarum cavarum, noduli valvularum seminularium, vasa vasorum, septum sinuum frontalem, ligamenta tendinum, canales nervorum petrosorum major et minor, processus pterygoidei, musculus flexor digitorum superficialis, musculus extensor digiti minimi, musculus psoas major, cavitas abdominis, disci intervertebrales, facies articulares, ligamentum capitis costae intraarticulare, articulatio capitis costae, ligamenta flava, labyrinthus ossis ethmoidalis, meatus nasi

communis, tuberositas phalangis digitalis, ossa digitorum manus, medulla ossium rubra (flava), pyramides renales, foramina papillaria, ductus papillares.

5. *Translate in written form:*

Alveolar ducts, alveoli of the lung, pulmonary lobules, cavity of the larynx, elastic membrane of the larynx, cricoid cartilage, islets of Langerhans, peritoneal cavity, pancreatic notch, tuber omentale of the pancreas, accessory pancreatic duct, anterior abdominal wall, permanent teeth, diaphragm of the mouth, cavity of the mouth proper, oral cavity, flexor digiti minimi muscle, flexor digitorum brevis muscle, plantar muscles, triceps surae muscle, extensor indicis muscle, extensor digitorum muscle, extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle, transverse ligament of the knee, lateral and medial semilunar cartilages, knee joint, apex of the head, tuberosity of the tibia, greater and lesser sciatic foramina, symphyseal surface, hip bone, flexor retinaculum, anterior carpal arch, superior phrenic arteries.

Lesson 15

Word-building by stems. Derived words. Greek-Latin duplicates and single terminological elements. General notion of the clinical terms structure _____

Aim: 1) *To know* the rules of word-building by stems and necessary of duplicate and single terminological elements, characteristic structural peculiarities of the clinical terms

2) *To be able to* analyse the terms and use Greek-Latin duplicates depending on the terminology subsystem (anatomical or clinical)

§ 108. Individual work

Translate clinical terms, explain the meaning of suffixes:

Cysta apicalis dentium, morbus infectiosus, hepar cystosum, ileus paralyticus, pneumonia serosa fibrinosa, colica gastrica, pneumonia crouposa, icterus pathogenus, hernia cerebralis occipitalis, abscessus hepatis ascaridosus, eczema vesiculosum, sectio venae seu venaesectio, extractio fetus, contractura vesicae urinariae, contractura articulationis acquisita, inflammatio serosa, inflammatio vesiculosa, perforatio palati duri, perforatio perinei, hernia hiatus oesophagei, paralysis spastica, eczema squamosum, cancer ventriculi.

§ 109. Word-building by stems

If there are two or more stems, the word is called compound. Composition is the most productive way of forming terms of Greek-Latin origin. The compound words are formed by two ways: pure composition and composition combined with suffixes. In pure composition the last bearing part is presented as an independent word. It is called a bearing part as it forms the word grammatically (noun or adjective), e.g., glossopharyngeus — the 1-st component — glosso + the second bearing component is pharyngeus (adjective of the 2-nd group). This way of pure composition is very productive in adjectives.

§ 110. Free and combined terminological elements

Many components of compound terms are not used in modern terminology separately. They are used only as terminological elements in the derived words. For example, Greek words *paideia* — education, *kardia* — heart are used in the structure of the derived words (orthopedia, tachycardia, etc.). These and other similar terminological elements (TE) are called combined. But there are also TE which can be used as independent words. They are called free terminological elements, e.g., sclerosis and cardiosclerosis, stasis and haemostasis. A great number of medical terms are made up with the help of suffixes. The suffix -ia of Greek origin is used very often. It is used in compound derivatives combined with suffixes. We may distinguish the combined TEs which became free, e.g., phobia (Gr. *phobos* — fear+ia) and ectomia (Gr. *ektome* — excision+ia). Now they may be used as separate words.

§ 111. Greek-Latin duplicates

The division of TE into combined and free should always be taken into consideration. The same organ may be denoted in two ways: by origin and grammar form. In nomenclature of normal anatomy it is independent and, as a rule, Latin word, but in pathological anatomy it is a combined TE of Greek origin. We may also meet the name of the same organ expressed both by the independent Latin root word and by the Greek component in the derivative, e.g., Lat. *mentum*, but linguamental — genioglossus (Gr. *geneion* — chin).

The Latin and Greek designations of anatomical formation having the same meaning are called Greek-Latin duplicates.

The terminological elements of Greek-Latin origin are international. The names of the anatomical nomenclature are mainly of Latin origin and the clinical terminology consists of combined TE of Greek origin.

There are few compound nouns in anatomical terms, but there are a lot of compound adjectives. Their bases may be unilingual either Latin or Greek. At the same time there are quite a lot of “hybrid” compositions, e.g., zygomatofrontalis, musculopectoralis.

§ 112. Some peculiarities of word-building by stems

1. Connective vowel or interfix.

The two or several stems may be combined in one word with the help of connective vowel or interfix.

The most frequent interfix in the medical terminology is -o-, more rarely -i-.

The first components of composition are indicated in the dictionaries with the interfix: **thoraco-**, **spondylo-**. There are connections without interfix, they are met in terms the first component of which ends in the vowel or the second one begins with the vowel, e.g., brady — (Gr. *bradys* — slow): brady-cardia: brachy — (Gr. *brachys* — short): brachy-dactylia.

2. Variability of the producing stem.

There are nouns and adjectives (III declension) in Latin and Greek the bases of which differ in Nom. and Gen. cases, e.g., cortex, cortic-is; Gr. som-a, somat-os.

The base of Gen. Case is a producing stem of the Latin words, e.g., cortic-o-visceralis, the same is with the Greek words. Besides, it may be met in variant form — the base is Nom. Case or Gen. Case, e.g., pan-, pant — everything, all: pan-demia, pant-o-phobia.

3. Phonetic and graphic variant of the stems.

Some Greek bases experienced latinization of different degree. Some of them preserved the pronunciation close to the original, some became Latin in pronunciation. As a result one and the same morpheme may be written in different way: Gr. cheir — hand — cheir, chir.

N.B. One should bear in mind that depending upon the place in the compound word and the extracted meaning of another component taking part in the composition there may be shades of meaning influencing the general meaning of the term. So the one-root TE haemo-, haemato-, and -aemia have one common meaning — “related to blood”. But the formal TE -aemia, which is preceded by designation of some substances, indicates the blood as media where these substances are revealed, presence or concentration of which in this media is pathologic (azotaemia, uraemia, bacteriaemia, etc.). If the terminological element haemo- or haemato- is combined with the designation of the organ, the general meaning of the compound word is accumulation of blood in the cavity of the organ, haemorrhage (haematomyelia, haemarthrosis).

§ 113. Clinical terminology. Structural types of clinical terms

Clinical terminology is a terminology complex of medico-biological knowledge including problems related to a sick organism. It is called pathology (Gr. *pathos* — suffering, disease + *logos* — science). It studies, first of all, the clinical course of the disease, i.e. its symptoms and manifestations, disturbances of physiological functions, structural alterations of the organs

and tissues as well as treatment and prophylaxis. The foundation of the clinical terminology is the terminology of pathologic anatomy — the science which studies material, structural bases of the disease, its morphologic essence (morphé — form, structure). The Greek-Latin duplicates and single TE of the clinical terminology are given in the table giving the name of the organs, parts of the body and tissue.

§ 114. Greek-Latin pairs naming organs of the body

Greek TE	Latin words	Meaning
kephalo-	caput, itis <i>n</i>	head
somato-	corpus, oris <i>n</i>	body
osteo-	os, ossis <i>n</i>	bone
acro-	membrum, i <i>n</i>	extremity
stetho-	pectus, oris <i>n</i>	chest
spondylo-	vertebra, ae <i>f</i>	vertebra
cardio-	cor, cordis <i>n</i>	heart
arthro-	articulatio, onis <i>f</i>	joint
stomato-	os, oris <i>n</i>	mouth
glosso-	lingua, ae <i>f</i>	tongue
rhino-	nasus, i <i>m</i>	nose
odonto-	dens, dentis <i>m</i>	tooth
cheiro-	manus, us <i>f</i>	hand
podo-	pes, pedis <i>m</i>	foot
gon-	genu, us <i>n</i>	knee

§ 115. Greek TE naming studies, science, method of diagnostic examination, treatment, suffering, disease

Greek TE	Meaning
-logia	science
-logo	disturbed speech
-scopia	observation
-metria, -metr	measure
-graphia	graphy
-gramma	X-ray

-therapia	treatment, therapy
noso- , patho-, -pathia	disease
-pathia	mood
alg- , -algia, -odynia	pain, tenderness

§ 116. Exercises

1. Analyse the terms. Point out terms from the Greek-Latin duplicates:

Osteologia, osteoarthropathia, somatologia, somatoscopia, acroalgia, spondylodynia, arthropathia, stomatologia, pathologia, stethometria, cardiographia, hormonotherapia, vasoconstrictio, nosologia, brachialgia, spondylographia, rhinologia, periosteum, osteogenus, hepatogenus, glossalgia, pancreatodynia, ileocecalis, ileocolicus, iliofemoralis, lymphonodus, thyreopathicus, thyreoglossus, ischiococcygeus, thyreogenus, podalgia, acheiria, chirosopia, gonalgia, apodia, chirospasmus, macropodia, brachiocephalicus, cheilodynia, ulodynia, gnathodynia.

2. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved:

1) Explain the meaning of the words: somatic, analgetic, acropathy, arthrography, enteroscope, enterology, rhinogenic, pathogenic, rhinopharyngoscopy, somatogenic, somatometry, osteoarthropathy, hepatopathy, stethoscope, analgin, cardiac, cardio-vascular, glossodynia, enteropathy, rhinoscope, cheiroscope (med. apparatus), gonodynia, gonarthrotomy, rachiotomy, micrognathia, microgenia, gnathopathy, gnathospasm.

2) Make up terms with the given meaning: pain in the spine; caused by heart involvement, i.e. of cardiac origin; caused by liver involvement; treatment of teeth; pain in the thorax; measurement of the head; inspection of the mouth; examination of the nasal walls; X-ray examination of the brain; disease of the extremities; disease of the teeth; disease of the brain; toothache; disease of the nose; disease of the joint; disease of the heart.

§ 117. Self-control

Fill in the blanks:

- 1) Any minimal, indivisible part of the word is called
- 2) If TE may be used as independent word, it is called
- 3) If TE is used only in the derivative, it is called
- 4) If the Greek TE and the Latin word coincide in their terminological meaning, they are called Greek-Latin
- 5) The nomenclature of anatomy consists mainly of words of ... origin and the clinical terminology consists of the corresponding ... duplicates.
- 6) What word-building method is used to connect ... stems in the compound word?

Lesson 16

Word-building in the clinical terminology (continuation). Greek-Latin duplicate designations of organs and tissues _____

- Aim:** 1) *To know* Greek-Latin TE
2) *To be able to* analyse and make up different word structures

§ 118. Greek-Latin duplicate designations of organs and tissues

Greek TE	Latin word	Meaning
splanchno-	viscera	internal organs
gastro-, gastria	ventriculus, <i>i m</i>	stomach
entero-	intestinum, <i>i n</i>	gut, intestine
laparo-	abdomen, <i>inis n</i>	
	venter, <i>tris m</i>	abdomen
procto-	anus, <i>i, hi</i>	anus
	rectum, <i>i n</i>	rectum
pneumo-, pneumono-	pulmo, <i>onis m</i>	lung
nephro-	ren, <i>renis m</i>	kidney
spleno-	lien, <i>enis m</i>	spleen
pyelo-	pelvis renalis	pelvis of the kidney (renal pelvis)
cysto-	vesica, <i>ae f</i>	
	vesica urinaria	bladder
cholecysto-	vesica fellea s.v. biliaris	gallbladder
metro-, metra- -metrium, hystero-	uterus, <i>i m</i>	womb, uterus
choleodocho-	ductus choledochus	bile duct
salpingo-	tuba uterina	Fallopian tube (oviduct)
trachelo-	cervix, <i>icis f(uteri)</i>	neck, cervix

§ 119. Greek TE naming pathologic changes of the organs and tissues, therapeutic and surgical methods

Greek TE	Meaning
-jatria, -jater	physician
-ectasia	expansion, distention
-ptosis	falling, ptosis
steno-	stenosis
sclero-	consolidation
-malacia	softening
-lysis, -lyt	resorption, resolution
-plastica	plastics
-tomia	dissection
tomo-	in layers
-ectomy	removal
-stomia	fistula
-pexia	fixation
-r(h)aphia	-rrhaphy

§ 120. Exercises

1. Explain the meaning of TE:

Omphalitis, typhlitis, oophoritis, dacryocystitis, trachelitis, cervicitis, salpingitis, orchitis, ganarthrosis, diverticulitis, mastoiditis, thyreotoxicosis, sigmoiditis, thyreocytus, thyreoiditis, gigantismus, ureteritis, cheilosis, cheilitis, gingivitis, ulitis, parodontitis, pulpitis, meloschisis, meloplastica, uranoplastica, geniohyoideus, genioglossus, odontoma, glossoptosis, papillitis, cheilognathouranoschisis, sinusitis maxillaris s. haighmoritis.

2. Complete the terms:

Vascular neurosis — ... neurosis; disease of the blood vessels — ... pathia; roentgenography of the blood vessels — ... graphia; inflammation of the vein — ... itis; incision of the vein — ... tomia; distention of the vein — phleb ...; distention of the artery — arteri ...; distention of the lymphatic vessels — lymph ...; constriction of the trachea — tracheo

3. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved:

1) *Translate into English:*

Hernia vaginalis, hernia subcutanea, lymphocytosis infectiosa acuta, colitis cystosa, colitis superficialis, resectio pylori, colitis ulcerosa nonspecifica, inflammatio fibrinosa, inflammatio purulenta, sarcoma osteogenum chondromatosis ossium, punctio pancreato-duodenalis, ductus biliferi, hernia femoralis, refluxus intestino-renal, splenitis maligna, pyelitis cystosa, pyelonephritis tuberculosa, bursitis articulationis genus, ankylosis dentium, albuminuria gravidarum, bursitis radiohumeralis, pyelonephrosis chronica, lien mobilis, splenopexia, carcinoma ovarii, carcinoma renis, carcinoma mammae, carcinoma fibrosum, carcinoma gigantocellulare, tumor malignus, tumor benignus, carcinoma hepatocellulare, refluxus caecoiliacus, nephrosis acuta, icterus haematogenus, nephrosis congenita.

2) *Translate into Latin:*

Inflammation of the vagina; sigmoid intestine sinus; plasty of the vagina and perineum; rupture of the vagina; excision of the umbelicus; inflammation of the lacrimal sac; widening of the lacrimal sac; roentgenography of the uterine tubes; inflammation of the uterine tubes and ovaries; instrument to dilate the rectum.

Lesson 17

Word-building in the clinical terminology (continuation). Prefixation. Suffixation. Derivatives with prefixes and suffixes _____

Aim: 1) *To know* frequent Greek-Latin duplicate and antonymous prefixes

2) *To be able to* analyse and form derivatives with the given meaning by using prefixes and suffixes

§ 121. The use of prefixes

Prefixes do not change the meaning of the word but add some component indicating localization (upper, lower, behind), direction (proximal, distal), time duration (before or after something), absence or denial of something.

Some prefixes developed secondary, figurative meaning on the base of its direct meaning. For example, Greek prefix *para-* — near, developed the meaning “deviation, deflection”.

Para-nasalis — near the nose, but paramnesia (Gr. *mnesis* — memory) — deviation of the memory.

TE-prefixes have direct meaning being used in descriptive names of morphologic disciplines. In the terms denoting pathologic states, diseases and disturbances, TE-prefixes are used with secondary meaning.

E.g., hypogastrium (Gr. *hypo* — under) — under the stomach (anatomy), hypotonia (Gr. *hypo* — below the norm) hypotension, decreased tension of the muscle (pathologic physiology).

TE-prefixes are widely used in the medical terminology. Anatomical nomenclature uses Latin prefixes and the terms of pathologic anatomy, physiology and clinical terms consist of prefixes of Greek origin.

As a rule, Latin prefixes are added to Latin roots, and Greek ones to Greek roots but there are exceptions, the so-called hybrides, e.g., *endocervicalis* — intracervical.

The meaning of some Latin prefixes coincide with that of Greek prefixes, they are duplicates.

For example: Lat. *inter-*, *meso-* — between; *contra-*, *anti-* — against.

Here are the most frequent Latin and Greek prefixes.

1. Lat -ad, -ab-

Gr. apo-

ad- (ac-, af-, al-, an-, ap-, as-, at-) — means approach, addition, e.g., ad-ductio — leading to, as-sistens (standing nearby) — assistant.

ab- (abs-, a-, apo-, ap-, aph-) — distance, movement from something, e.g., ab-oralis — distant from the mouth.

2. Lat. intra-, intro-, extra-, extro-.

Gr. endo-, ento-, -ecto-, exo-.

Intra- — inside, e.g., intra-abdominalis — inside the abdomen; extra- — outside.

3. Lat. infra-, sub-, Gr. hypo- hyp- — under something, below. Lat. supra-, super-, Gr. hyper-, epi- — mean over something above.

The prefix infra- is usually contrary to supra-. In anatomical nomenclature sub- is met mainly in the adjectives and hypo — in the nouns with Greek roots. Hyper- is not used in anatomical nomenclature.

E.g., intra-scapularis — under the scapula, epigastricum — over the stomach.

4. Lat ante-, prae-, pro-, Gr. pro- mean in front of something, before. Lat. post-, Gr. meta- (met-) mean behind, after.

E.g., pro-lapsus — falling out of the organ; postnatalis — after delivery.

The prefix meta- may have secondary meaning, the transition of one state or place into another one, change.

E.g., metastasis — transfer of pathologic material from one of the organism to another one.

N.B. The prefix **peri-** in combination with the name of the organ denotes the external membrane, tissue, capsule surrounding the organ.

E.g., periosteum — surrounds the bone outside.

The prefix **para-** in combination with the name of the internal organ denotes cellular tissue near or around the organ.

E.g., para-nephritis — inflammation of the cellular tissue around the kidney.

Para- may have secondary meaning, deviation of the norm.

E.g., para-acusis — wrong misapprehension of auditory impressions.

5. Lat. contra-, Gr. anti- mean opposite position, state, e.g., contralateralis — locating on the opposite side.

6. Gr. dys- means disorder, disturbance of the function, qualitative or quantitative deviations, e.g., dys-tonia — disturbance of the tension.

Gr. eu- means normal function, e.g., eupnoe — normal respiration.

7. Lat. dis-, Gr. dia- mean separation, disconnection, dissection.

E.g., dis-seminatio — dissimulation, spreading of the pathologic process or disease agent.

All the Latin and Greek prefixes

Latin	Greek	Meaning
ad-		approaching
ab-	apo	removal
intro-, intra-	entro-, endo-	inside
extra-	ecto	outside
infra-	hypo-	below
sub-	hyp-	under
prae-, post-	meta-	ahead, behind
trans-	dia-	across
inter	meso-, dia-, di-	between, in the middle
circum-	peri-	round near
per-		through
retro-		behind
re-		renewal, reproduction
con-	syn-	with
contra-	anti-	opposite action, position
	ana-	renewal of the action; from top to bottom
	cata-	aggravation of action: from bottom to top
in-, im-	en-	in, inside
ex-	ec-	from outside
in-	a-, an-	absence, negation of the sign
	dys-	disorder, breach
	eu-	normal function
dis-	dia-	division dismemberment

The most important suffixes of nouns in the clinical terminology

Suffix	-itis	-osis	-iasis	-oma
Noun declension	Nouns of the feminine gender of the III declension non-equally compound	Nouns of the feminine gender of the III declension equally compound	Nouns of the feminine gender of the III declension equally compound	Nouns of the neuter gender of III declension, having the ending -omatis in Gen. sing.
Meaning of the suffix	Inflammatory process	Disease of non-inflammatory character, often connected with exceeding of the norm	1. Diseases of non-inflammatory character 2. Signs of diseases	1. Tumour 2. Tumour-like formation
The producing stem	The base of the noun is the name of the organ bronchus, <i>i m</i> — bronchus	The base of the noun monocytus, <i>i m</i> — monocytes; arthron — joint	The base of the noun nephros — kidney; lithos — stone; leon, leontos — lion	The base of the noun (usually Greek) mys, myos (Gr.) — muscle haema, haema-tos (Gr.) — blood
The derived noun	bronchitis, <i>i</i> <i>f</i> — inflammation of the bronchus	monocytosis, <i>i</i> <i>f</i> — increase of monocytes number in blood; arthrosis, <i>i</i> <i>f</i> — arthrosis, disease of the joint of non-inflammatory character	nephrolithiasis, <i>i</i> <i>f</i> — nephrolithiasis, stone formation in the kidneys; leontiasis, <i>i</i> <i>f</i> — leontiasis, leonine face, a sign of leprosy	myoma, <i>i</i> <i>n</i> — tumor originated from the muscular tissue; haematoma, <i>i</i> <i>n</i> — hematoma, bruise under the skin resembling tumor
English transcription	[aitis] bronchitis	[ousis] monocytosis	[eisis] nephrolithiasis	[ouma] myoma

§ 122. Exercises

1. Single out the prefixes, explain their meaning:

Achylia — lack of the gastric juice; dysthyreosis — dysfunction of the thyroid gland; dystrophia — disturbance of tissue nutrition; dyspnoe — breathlessness; ectopia — congenital displacement of the organ; splenectomy — excision of the spleen; endarteriitis — inflammation of the inner layer of the artery wall; epidermis — the upper layer of the skin; paracystitis — inflammation of the paravesical fat; pediarthritis — inflammation of the soft tissues surrounding the joint; perigastritis — inflammation of the peritoneal coat of the stomach; periarteriitis — inflammation of the outer layer of the artery wall; prophylaxis — prevention from the disease; syndactylia — adhesion of the fingers; hyperkinesis — involuntary excessive movements; hypersecretio — increased secretion; hyposecretio — decreased secretion; hypothermia — decrease of the body temperature below the norm; hyperaciditas — increased acidity of the gastric juice; hypoxia — decreased oxygen contents in tissues.

2. Insert the corresponding prefixes:

Weakening of the tension — ...tomy, increased tension — ...tonia; increased sugar amount in blood — ...glykaemia; insufficient sugar amount in the blood — ...glykaemia; disturbance of normal intestinal flora — ...bacteriosis; inflammation of the inner uterus membrane — ...metritis; inflammation of the parauterus connective tissue — ...metritis; decrease of the function of the thyroid gland — ...thyreosis; increased sensitivity — ...aesthesia; decreased sensitivity — ...aesthesia.

3. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved.

1) Explain the meaning taking into consideration the meaning of all or a part of TE:

Infraorbitalis, supravescicularis, infratrochlearis, supratrochlearis, interclavicularis, interosseus, intralobularis, intramuscularis, parasternalis, episternalis, suprasternalis, subcorticalis, subduralis, epitympanicus, endocervicalis, applicatio, antenatalis, postnatalis, intertarsea, intranatalis, mesoduodenum, interalveolaris, subcutaneus, extrapulmonalis, extrapyramidalis, extramuralis, paravesicalis, supramandibularis, retrobuccalis, premolares (dentes), subpleuralis, connectivus, adducens, abducens, abductio, praeglaucoma, praecancerosus, aggravatio (gravis — heavy), exhumatio (humus — ground), adaptatio (aptus — suitable, capable), decompensatio, desactivatio, absorptio (sorbeo — drink in, soak into), praemorbidus (morbus — disease), diastole (rhythmic dilatation of the cardiac chambers), systole (rhythmic contraction of cardiac chambers), dilatatio (dilatare — to widen), diathermia (Gr. thermos — heat), empyema (Gr. pyon — pus) — accumulation of pus

in the natural cavity, praesenilis (senex, senis, — old), praeventivus, pronephros, prolongatus, metanephros, secretum (secerno — separate).

2) *Form nouns denoting inflammation of the following organs:*

Gaster, tris *f* — stomach; pleura, itis *f* — pleura; colon, i *n* — colon; hepar, atis *n* — liver; pancreas, atis *n* — pancreas; parynx, ngis *m* — pharynx; meninx, ngis *f* — meninx; peritoneum, i *n* — peritoneum; arthron, i *n* — joint; cystis, is *f* — bladder.

3) *Form and translate the nouns denoting tumours:*

Angion — vessel; nephros — kidney; derma, dermatos — skin; fibra — fiber; aden — gland; neuron — nerve.

4. *Point out suffixes in the following nouns. Explain their meaning. Give English equivalents of the terms:*

Helminthiasis (helmintosis), lipomatosis, arthritis, adenoma, mycosis, cystolithiasis, lymphocytosis, fibroma, meningitis, encephalitis, phlebitis, chondritis, osteochondrosis, urolithiasis, hypervitaminosis, agranulocytosis.

Lesson 18

Word-building in the clinical terminology (continuation). Greek-Latin pairs naming tissues, organs, secretions, discharge, sex, age _____

- Aim:** 1) *To know* Greek-Latin TE
2) *To be able to* analyse and make up terms with the given meaning

§ 123. Individual work

Answer the questions:

1. What Greek and Latin prefixes have the meaning being between something?
2. What prefixes denote disturbance of the function, weakening of the function, strengthening of the function?
3. What prefixes denote absence, denial of the sign named by the root of the word?
4. What name of the layers of the cardiac wall (endocardium, myocardium, epicardium) is related to the external layer?
5. What prefix is opposite in meaning to the prefix ad-?
6. How can you explain the meaning of words apathy, sympathy, anti-pathy?
7. What terms can be used to denote weakening of respiration, accelerated respiration, respiration arrest, difficult breathing?

§ 124. Greek-Latin pairs naming tissues, organs, secretions, discharge, sex, age

Greek TE	Latin words	Meaning
haemo-, -aemia	sanguis, inis <i>m</i>	blood
histo-	textus, us <i>m</i>	tissue
myo, mysium-	musculus, i <i>m</i>	muscle
cyto, cytus-	cellula, ae <i>f</i>	cell

chondro- cele- neuro- adeno- angio- phlebo- teno- dermo- uro-, -uresis chole- chylo- pyo- hidro- hydro- myelo- masto- oto- ophthalmo- sphygmo-	cartilago, inis <i>f</i> hernia, ae <i>f</i> nervus, i <i>m</i> glandula, ae <i>f</i> vasculum, i <i>n</i> vena, ae <i>f</i> tendo, inis <i>m</i> cutis, is <i>f</i> urina, ae <i>f</i> fel, fellis <i>n</i> lymphā, ae <i>f</i> pus, puris <i>n</i> sudor, oris <i>m</i> aqua, ae <i>f</i> medulla spinalis mamma, ae <i>f</i> auris, is <i>f</i> oculus, i <i>m</i> pulsus, us <i>m</i>	cartilage hernia nerve gland blood vessel vein tendon skin urine bile lymph pus sweat liquid, fluid spinal cord mammary gland ear eye pulse
--	---	---

**§ 125. Single TE denoting functional
and pathologic conditions, process**

bio — life geno — origin, birth, development pneumo — air penia — lack, comparison with the norm rhoea — discharge of fluid, etc. stasis — stagnation, natural accumulation plasia — formation of tissues, cells, organs phobo, phobia — fear phreno — pertaining to psychic characteristics of the person	pnoë — respiration aesthesio — feeling, sensation kinesia — pertaining to motion cytosis — increase of cell amount rhagia — bleeding from the organ tono — tension philo, philia — love, to be liable to plegia — stroke, paralysis phrenico — related to the diaphragm
--	--

N.B.

1. The initial TE pneumo- combined with the name of the organ means presence of the air in this organ. In combination with TE -graphia pneumo- means introduction of the gas into the organ to make contrast roentgenography. The lung is usually denoted by the base pneumon-.

2. The initial TE haemo- or haema- combined with the name of the organ means haemorrhage (bleeding) into its cavity, as a rule the name of the organ is used in Nom. Case without any suffix.

§ 126. Exercises

1. Explain the meaning of TE:

Haemolysis, haemotherapy, haemostasis, empyema, haemangioma, haemangiomatosis, haemarthrosis, haematologia, haematoma, haematonephrosis, azotaemia, cholaemia, uraemia, haematuria, urohaematoma, urethritis, ureteritis, vasoresectio, vasotomia, ectopia, vasoconstrictio, myoma, myoblastus, myoblastoma, perimysium, endomysium, acrohidrosis, neurosis, neuritis, neuroma neurolysis, angioneurosis, adenotomia, lymphadenitis, hyperaemia, lymphadenoma, lymphangiadenographia, hidradenitis, anhidrosis, aesthesiologia, angiectasia, phlebectasia, anaesthesia, hypoaesthesia, phlebosclerosis, erythroblastus, ovocytus, dermatosis, dermatographia, mesoderma, periderma, dermatitis, dermatostomatitis, sphygmographia, ureterolysis, pneumolysis, pneumomalacia, lithotomia, lithiasis, cholelithiasis, urolithiasis, broncholithus, broncholithiasis, dysfunctio, chylothorax, chyluria, chylocele, synostosis, myelopathia, aplasia, hyperplasia, dysplasia, metaplasia, myelodysplasia, mesoduodenum, myelosis, osteomyelitis, mastoptosis, hydrocephalus, otoneurologia, otitis, ophthalmologia, cholekinesis, hypopituitarismus, ductus bilifer, vesica biliaris seu vesica fellea, gynaecologia, paediatrica, logopaedia, chondrocytus, haemocytosis, gerontologia, hydrophilia, hydrophobia, geriatria, anergia, synergia, asynergia, hyperergia, chirurgia, tenodesis, atrichia, onychia, hyperdynamia, hypodynamia, amnesia, sialadenitis, sialorrhoea, coprostasis, galactostasis, lipoma, morphologia, keratoma, keratosis, keratitis, biopsia.

2. Complete the terms:

Glandular tumor — ...oma; effecting the cause of the disease — ...tropus, science about glands of internal secretion — ...endocrino... ; a specialist in pain-killing — anaesthesio... ; pain along the nerve — neur... ; medicine eliminating pain — an... ; disease of the blood vessels — angio... ; inflammation of the bag around the hear — peri... .

3. Make up terms with the given meaning:

Tumour generating from sweat glands; tumour generating from the tissue of the thymus gland; hemoglobin in the urine; bile in the blood; benign tumour of the fat tissue; difficulty of swallowing; accumulation of pus and blood in the pericardium; pus in the abdominal cavity; muscular weakness; science of diseases of blood; pathology of cells; inflammation of the skin; disturbance of development; inflammation of the lymph vessels; treatment by blood; inflammation of the lymph node, increase of the number of lymphocytes; stagnation of bile; stagnation of lymph; delay of the blood flow; motion disorder; destruction of cells; bleeding from the uterus; destruction of tissues; outside the cell; disturbance of nutrition; absence of sensitivity; spasm of vessels; decrease of pressure; accumulation of air and blood in the pericardium; weakened breathing.

Lesson 19

Word-building in the clinical terminology (continuation). Single TE denoting different physical properties, qualities, relations and other signs _____

- Aim:** 1) *To know* new Greek-Latin TE
2) *To be able to* analyse and make up different word structures

§ 127. For individual work

Translate into English:

Gingivitis gravidarum, granuloma subcutaneum odontogenum, caries acuta profunda, hypoplasia enameli, caries simplex, hyperaesthesia dentium, hyperaemia pulpaе, pulpitis acuta diffusa, pulpitis chronica gangraenosa, periodontitis apicalis, calculus dentalis, calculus supragingivalis, stomatitis ulcerosa, cheilitis superficialis.

§ 128. Single TE denoting different physical properties, qualities, relations and other signs

homeo — similar, the same, identical	neo — new, young, newly formed
pseudo — false	xero — dry
thermo — warm, related to temperature	pyr — fever, heat
macro — large	micro — small
megalo — enlarged	oligo — little, not significant
poly — many	pan — all, the whole
brachy — short, shortened	brady — slow, slowed
tachy — fast, quickened	leuco — white, related to leukocytes
erythro — red, related to erythrocytes	glyco — sweet, presence of sugar, glucose

pachy — hard, consolidated auto — oneself, the same, automatic hetero — one of the others, unlike aniso — unequal, disproportionate	lepto — thin, tender, weak allo — the other, unusual iso — equal, identical, the same neo — new, young, created again
tele-, telo — distant, completion cryo — pertaining to the frost	ortho — straight, vertical, right chroma — color, dying, pertaining to the chromo
hemi — one-sided, half-and-half xantho — yellow	dolicho — long chloro — green, containing chlorine
polio — grey, pertaining to the grey substance of the brain	

§ 129. Exercises

1. Make up Latin terms with the meaning:

Hernia of the meninges; release of the nerves (from scars); stitch of the nerve; dissection of the nerve; multiple inflammation of the peripheral nerves; generating pus; multiple inflammation of the joints; inflammation of several lymph nodes, unilateral paralysis, absence of temperature sensitivity; false jaundice; false gout; slowed swallowing, enlargement of the heart; plastic operation in the region of cardiac foramen; inflammation of all layers of the veins; inflammation of the inner layer of the vein.

2. Name the Greek-Latin duplicates denoting the following anatomico-histologic formations:

Lung, muscle, head, nerve, vessel, vein, spleen, mouth, bone, cartilage, bone marrow, spinal cord, tissue, cell, gland, lymph node, chest, joint, stomach, large intestine, small intestine, vertebra, abdomen, heart, eye, ear, nose, tooth, kidney, mammary gland, uterus.

3. Complete the terms:

Fungous affection of the oral mucosa — stomato...; fungous affection of the nails — onycho...; loss of memory — a ...; weakening of memory — hypo...; bleeding from the uterus — metro...; nasal bleeding — rhino...; affection of the nerve of inflammatory character — ...itis; operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system — ...chirurgia; release of the nerve from the scar — ...lysis; science dealing with disease of the nervous system — ...pathologia; science dealing with mental diseases and their treatment — ...iatría; treatment by psychiatric influence on the patient — ...therápia.

4. *Execises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved.*

1) *Translate into Latin in written form:*

Gangrenous adenitis, infections adenitis, submandibular adenitis, hepatocellular adenoma, serous adenofibroma, subcutaneous emphysema, a trophic emphysema, embolism of the pulmonary artery, embolism of the spinal cord, hematogenic cholangitis, juvenile progressive paralysis, tuberculous empyema, arteriovenous angioma, hematoma of the brain, hematoma of the spinal cord membranes, hemolysis of the atria, chronic atrophy of muscles, abscess of the lymph nodes, intraarticular fracture, traumatic keratitis, stomach resection, white atrophy of the skin, heart rupture.

2) *Point out TE or/and word-forming bases. Explain their meaning:*

Haematomyelia, splanchnomegalia, xenogenus, cholangioenterotomia, polyotia, chylothorax, anhidrosis, hypaesthesia, endophytus, exophytus, autopyotherapia, erythrocytus, erythrocytosis, erythrophobia, bradypnoë, tachypnoë, bradysystolia, hemiparesis, osteoarthritis, osteogenesis, lymphadenitis, lymphangiitis, lymphangioma, lymphadenographia, lymphadenosis, glycolysis, lymphangioendothelioma, lymphangiomatosis, lymphangiomyoma, lymphoma, lymphomatosis, lymphopenia, panserositis, lymphorrhoea, lymphosarcoma, lymphosarcomatosis, lymphocytus, lymphocytoma, lymphocytosis, hyperkinesia, teleendoscopia, coloproctectomia, megacolon, psychotherapia, xantoma, heterochromia, pathogenesis, osteodysplasia, osteomyelitis, osteoma, rhinorrhagia, gnathoplastica, glossoptosis, parotitis, hypersalivatio, orthogenia.

Lesson 20

Self-training for the content control _____

Aim: 1) *To revise* the material of lessons

2) *To consolidate* the skills of structural and semantic analysis and formation of the clinical terms of different word-building structure

§ 130. Recommendations

1. Revise the duplicate and terminological elements, Greek and Latin prefixes and suffixes.

2. Pay special attention to those TEs which are polysemantic or have close meanings in the medical terminology.

3. As the formation of the terms with the given meaning is the most difficult task, you should pay more attention to this aspect while preparing to the test.

§ 131. Exercises for individual work

1. *Complete the terms:*

Decreased sensitivity — ...aesthesia; congestion of blood in the lower parts of the organs — ...stasis; bag around the heart — ...cardium; bone junction with the help of fibrous connective tissue — ...desmosis; incision of the bone — ...tomy; restorative operation on the bone — ...plastica; inflammation of a single joint — mon...; pain in the joint — ...algia; hemorrhage into the joint — haem...osis; tumor from the cartilagenous tissue — ...oma; bone junction with the help of cartilagenous tissue — syn...osis; inflammation of the gall-bladder — ...cystitis; purulent disease of the skin — pyo...a; science studying the aging symptoms — ...logia; generated from the wrong word of the physician — ...genes; treatment of children's diseases — ...iatry; a specialist in psychiatric diseases — psych...; specialist in tuberculosis — phthis...; treatment by blood transfusion — haemo...; treatment by air — aero...; usage of natural factors in treatment — ...therapy;

graphic depiction of the muscular work — myo...; roentgenography of the urinary ducts — uro...; instrumental examination of the rectum — recto...; investigation of the eye fundus with the help of ophthalmoscope — ophthalmo...; examination of the bladder wall with the help of cystoscope — cysto...; disease of the muscles — ...pathia; muscular pain — ...algia; science about organism tissues — ...logia; formation and development of organism tissues — ...genesis; consolidation of the kidney — nephro...; removal of the kidney — ...ectomia; thickening of the artery walls — athero...; inflammation of the kidney — ...itis; disease of the kidneys — ...pathia; lowering of the kidney — ...ptosis; inflammation of the renal pelvis — ...itis; inflammation of the renal pelvis and the kidney — ...nephritis; distention of the renal pelvis — ...ectasia; discharge of the urine in small amount — olig...; presence of bacteria in the urine — bacteri...; process of urine formation — ...poesis; caused by psychiatric causes — ...genes; science about psychiatric processes in the forms deviated from the norm — ...pathologia.

2. *Single out the prefixes, explain their meaning. Give English equivalents of the terms:*

Dystrophia, adductio, apophysis, abstinentia, extrauterinus, ectoderma, supracromialis, epigastrium, pronephros, metathalamus, metabolismus, mesoderma, diaphysis, perimetrium, paranephritis, pertussis, diarrhoea, respiratio, contralateralis, anabiosis, anamnesis, catamnesis, ectopia, analgesia, anaemia, dystonia, dystrophia, dyspepsia, degeneratio, secretio.

3. *Analyse the composition of the terms, explain their meaning:*

1) Roentgenogramma. 2) Encephalogramma. 3) Roentgenographia. 4) Electro-encephalographia. 5) Myogramma. 6) Bronchographia. 7) Bronchoscopia. 8) Oesophagoscopia. 9) Cystoscopia. 10) Achromatoscopia. 11) Biopsia. 12) Myositis. 13) Myocardium. 14) Myocarditis. 15) Myoma. 16) Adenomyoma. 17) Myocardiopathia. 18) Histocytus. 19) Histolysis. 20) Histologia. 21) Cardiosclerosis. 22) Phlebosclerosis. 23) Nephrosclerosis. 24) Cardialgia. 25) Hepatogenus. 26) Nephritis. 27) Pyelonephritis. 28) Pyelitis. 29) Pyelocystitis. 30) Pyelographia. 31) Urologia. 32) Urologus. 33) Anuria. 34) Dysuria. 35) Uropoeticus. 36) Haematuria. 37) Uraemia. 38) Urolithiasis. 39) Cholelithiasis. 40) Phlebolithus. 41) Anastomosis. 42) Stomatologus. 43) Gasrostomia. 44) Choledochostomia.

4. *Fill in the prefixes in the following terms: -anti, -epi, -syn, -hypo:*

1) Vaccine against rabies. 2) Epiglottis. 3) The area under the stomach. 4) The area over the stomach. 5) Joined activity. 6) Antidiphtheria serum. 7) Blood congestion in the lower part of the organ. 8) Bone junction by osseal tissue.

5. *Form nouns denoting inflammation of the following organs:*

Musculus, *i m* — muscle; auris, *is f* — ear; nephros — kidney, pelvis renalis — pelvis of the kidney, vesica fellea — gallbladder, uterus, *i m* — womb; rectum, *i n*, — rectum; intestinum, *i n* — intestine; cervix uteri — neck, cervix.

6. *Form the terms with the following TEs, translate into English:*

a) arthr- (pathia, -itis, -osis), nephr- (-algia, -ectomy, -tomy, -itis, -ptosis, -rrhaphia), cardi- (-pathia, -lysis, -rrhexis, -itis, -spasmus), rhin- (-itis, -scopia, -rrhoea, -rrhagia), my-, myo- (-itis, -osis, -oma, -pathia, -algia), neur- (-algia, -pathia, -itis, -oma).

b) dys- (-plasia, -ostosis, -uria, -kinesia, -pnoë, -tonia, -phagia), an-, ana- (-aemia, -uria, -mnesis, -hydrosis, -aesthesia, -algesia).

c) osteo-, spondylo-, adeno-, phlebo-, nephr-, gastro-, cysto- (-tomy); chylo-, uro-, chole-, lympho-, phlebo-, haemo- (-stasis).

7. *Name Greek and Latin duplicates denoting the following anatomico-histologic formations:*

Joint, chest, bone, head, extremity, spondyle, heart, mouth, tongue, nose, tooth, hand, foot, knee, stomach, intestine, abdomen, lung, kidney, spleen, pelvis of the kidney, bladder, womb, neck, gallbladder, gland, vein, cell, tissue, bile, lymph, ear.

§ 132. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved

1. *Single out TEs, explain the meaning of the derivatives:*

Chylothorax, hyperaesthesia, arthritis, osteoma, endocardium, perios-teum, synostosis, osteoarthritis, cholecystitis, phlebectasia, therapia, dermatologia, epidermis, angiomatosis, glycaemia, anaemia, haemotherapy, hydraemia, thrombopenia, leucopenia, hyperglykaemia, myocarditis, histolysis, myocardio-pathia, dysuria, gastrostomia, uraemia, cardiosclerosis, polymyositis, colitis, dysentery, nephroptosis, lymphorrhoea, lymphocytosis, bradypnoë, apnoë, tachypnoë, bradycardia, tachycardia, cholecystopexia.

2. *Translate into Latin TE with meaning:*

Many; red, related to erythrocytes; white, related to leukocytes; all, the whole; little, not significant; sweet, presence of sugar; disease, pathology; pain, tenderness; science; graphy; observation; dissection; plastics; in layers, removal; fistula; fixation, rrhaphy; physician; discharge of fluid pertaining to psychic; formation of tissues; related to the diaphragm; love; to be liable to.

3. *Make up terms with the given meaning:*

Inflammation of the joint; inflammation of the bladder; inflammation of the gall-bladder; pain in the aorta area; pain in the joint; headache; diseases of the bones; disease of the heart; disease of the vessels; disease of the joints; science studying the human being; science dealing with the heart and cardiovascular diseases; science dealing with the causes of the diseases; inflammation of the blood vessels; distention of the bronchi; constriction of the bronchi; science about tuberculosis and its treatment (phthisis, is *f* — TB); treatment by sun rays (helios — sun); roentgenography of the vessels; roentgenographic inspection of the bladder; examination of the larynx with the help of laryngeal mirror; thickening of the artery walls; thickening of the vein walls; consolidation of the lungs (pneumon — lung); discharge of pus with the urine (pyon — pus); discharge of blood with the urine; discharge of albumin with the urine (albumen, inis *n* — albumin); softening of the spinal cord; softening of the bones; softening of the brain; predisposition to hemorrhage; predisposition to spasms; fear of water; fixed idea of cardiac disease; fungous disease of the skin; fungous affection of the bronchi; renal hemorrhage; intestinal hemorrhage.

Lesson 21

General notion about pharmaceutical terminology.

Nomenclature of the medicinal preparations.

Trivial names of the medicinal substances _____

Aim: 1) *To know* the ways of word-building and structure of the names of the medicinal preparations and substances

2) *To be able* to analyse the pharmaceutical terms by their composition, single out frequent sections

§ 133. Pharmaceutical terminology.

Some general pharmaceutical terms

Pharmaceutical terminology is a complex consisting of terminology of a number of special disciplines combined under the general name “pharmacy” (Gr. *pharmakeia* — formation and usage of medicines) which study innovations, production and usage of the medicinal preparations.

A nomenclature of the medicinal substances plays a main role in this complex.

General pharmaceutical terms:

1. Remedium, medicamentum — medicinal preparation.
2. Materia medica — medicinal substance.
3. Forma medicamentorum — medicine form.
4. Praeparatum — preparation.

§ 134. Trivial names of the medicinal substances

Many chemical compounds used as medicines preserve the same names they have in chemical nomenclature. For example, sodium chloride, ferrous lactate. But in nomenclature of the medicinal preparations the chemical compounds are given not in their scientific, systematic names but in trivial names (Lat. *trivialis* — everyday use).

Systematic names are not suitable as names of the medicinal substances. They are substituted for trivial ones for they are short, simple for professional and everyday use. For example, analeinum is a trivial name, its systematic (scientific name) is as follows: phenil-2.3-methyl-4-methyl-aminopirason-5-IV metansulphonate of sodium.

Trivial names of the medicinal substances are derivatives of different word-building structure. The base word is mostly systematic name of the chemical compounds. The sources for formation of trivial names are the words, word-building elements, roots and the so-called word sections of ancient Greek and Latin origin.

For example, the preparation made from the plant named Ephedra is called Ephedrinum.

All Latin names of the medicinal preparations are nouns of II declension, the neuter gender.

The patent names of the preparations made in different countries are formed on the base of the language of their country-producer (English, French, Spanish, etc.) and are written by Latin letters. For example, Mexase, Lasix, Baralgin. The names often contain Greek and Latin TEs, roots, frequent sections of anatomical, therapeutic, physiological and pharmaceutical character.

§ 135. Frequent sections in the trivial names

Abbreviation is the most productive way of formation of trivial names. Abbreviations are formed by combination of frequent sections of pharmaceutical TEs. They may reflect information of anatomical, physiological and therapeutic character. For example, TE hydr (water) indicates the presence of hydrogen — Hydrogenium, Hydrargyrum.

It is necessary to memorize the most frequent word-building elements met in the pharmaceutical terminology.

Hydr (water) — Hydrogenium, *i n*

Myc (mushroom) — Neomycinum, *i n*

Oxy (sour) — Oxygenium, *i n*

Glyc (sweet) — Corgluconum, *i n*

Pyr (fever) — Antipyrinum, *i n*

Phen (phenol) — Phenacetinum, *i n*

Cycl (circle) — Tetracyclinum, *i n*

-zid,-zol,-zin — Phthivazidum, *i n*

-cillinum — Penicillinum, *i n* (antibiotics of penicillin group)

Myl (Gr. myle — substance) — Amylum, *i n*

Thyr (the thyroid gland) — Thyrotropinum, *i n*

Chol (bile) — Alacholum, *i n*

Cardi (heart) — Cardioalenum, *i n*

Anaesthes (loss of sensation) — Anaesthesinum, *i n*

Sulfa (sulphur) — Sulfaperidosinum, *i n*

Barb (barbituric acid) — Barbamylum, *i n*

§ 136. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved

1. Read aloud the names of the medicinal preparations and substances, translate, single out the frequent sections, TE and suffixes and explain their meanings:

Valocardinum, Morphinum, Bicillinum, Amycazolium, Erythromycinum, Valosedan, Mycosolon, Pharyngosept, Mycoseptin, Chlorophthalmum, Methicilinum, Novurit, Barbamylum, Panangin, Enteroseptolum, Gentamycinum, Synthomycinum, Phenobarbitalum, Glycerinum, Glucosum, Asthmatinum, Hydrocortisotum.

2. Read aloud. Explain the grammatical structure of the preparation names:

a) Solutio Strophanthini, tabulettae Prednisoloni, tabulettae Pantocrini, unguentum "Psoriasisum", solutio Camphorae oleosa, unguentum Tetracyclini ophthalmicum, linimentum "Sanitas", tabulettae "Cholenzymum", solutio Glucosi, tabulettae "Bellasthesinum", suspensio "Cindolum", emplastrum Euphyllini, Streptocidum solubile, species antiasthmaticae.

b) Extractum placentae, tabulettae olei Menthae, radix Althaeae, sirupus Althaeae, solutio Dicaini, cortex Frangulae, emplastrum Plumbi compositum, tabulettae Barbamyli, extractum Leonuri fluidum, suppositoria "Anaesthesolum", tabulettae Aloës obductae, infusum foliorum Digitalis, fructus Crataegi, chole conservata medicata, aërosolum "Kamphomen".

5. Read, single out Greek and Latin terminological elements, frequent sections of different character in patent names of preparations of different countries:

Isocard, Physiotens, Antiarrhythmikum, Chilak, Clemastin, Bioporox, Bromhexin, Lazix, Diacarb, Broncholitin, Aspyrin Upsa, Baralgin, Antidol, Corinfar, Streptussin, Dermosolon, Strepsils, Lipostabil, Ultraprost, Heparin, Nazol, Panadol, Psoriaten, Hemiton, Amydopyrin, Cordaron, Cardix, Spasmalgon, Cerebrolisin, Deponit, Kapoten.

§ 137. Self-control

1. The pharmaceutic terminology consists of a number of terminologies
2. The general pharmaceutical terms are
3. Systemic names are notions of
4. Trivial names are notions of
5. Trivial names are the parts of the words of ... and ... origin.
6. The frequent sections have got the information of
7. The names of most patent preparations of different countries consist of

§ 138. Vocabulary

aërosolum , <i>i n</i> — aerosol	extractum , <i>i n</i> — extract
gutta , <i>ae f</i> — drop	unguentum , <i>i n</i> — ointment
linimentum , <i>i n</i> — liniment	pasta , <i>ae f</i> — paste
emplastrum , <i>i n</i> — plaster	suppositorium , <i>i n</i> — suppository
pulvis , <i>eris m</i> — powder	tabuleta , <i>ae f</i> — tablet
tabuleta obducta — coated tablet	solutio , <i>onis f</i> — solution
suspensio , <i>onis f</i> — suspension	emulsum , <i>i n</i> — emulsion
pilula , <i>ae f</i> — pill	tinctura , <i>ae f</i> — tincture
infusum , <i>i n</i> — infusion	decoctum , <i>i n</i> — decoction
sirupus medicinalis — medicinal syrup	species , <i>ei f</i> — medicinal species
capsula , <i>ae f</i> — capsule	capsula gelatinosa — gelatinous capsule
capsula amylacea — starch capsule	granulum , <i>i n</i> — granule

Lesson 22

Chemical nomenclature in Latin.

The names of the chemical elements, acids, oxides and salts

Aim: 1) *To know* Latin names of the most significant chemical elements
2) *To be able to* make up the names of acids, oxides and salts in Latin

§ 139. The names of the chemical elements, acids, oxides and salts

The Latin names of the chemical elements are nouns of the neuter gender, II declension. The exceptions are sulfur, *uris n* — III declension, the neuter gender and phosphorus, *im* — II declension, the masculine gender.

The chemical symbols originated from the Latin names of the elements: Ca — Calcium; Fe — Ferrum.

Some elements have got other Latin names in different countries.

E.g., Na — Sodium, Hg — Mercury, K — Potassium in English.

According to the international way of formation the names of the acids consist of the acidum, *in* and coordinated adjective with the suffix — *icum*: acidum salicylicum, acidum boricum, acidum lacticum.

Some elements may form two acids. In this case the names of the acids with a large amount of oxygen are formed with the help of the adjective with the suffix **-icum**: acidum sulfuricum — sulfuric acid; acidum nitricum — nitric acid; acidum phosphoricum — phosphoric acid.

When the amount of oxygen is smaller, the adjectives with the suffix **-osum** are used. *E.g.*, acidum sulfurosum — sulfurous acid; acidum nitrosusum — nitrous acid; acidum phosphorosum — phosphorous acid.

According to the international way of formation the names of oxygen-free acids are made up with the help of the prefix **hydro-**.

E.g., acidum hydrochloricum — hydrochloride acid; acidum hydrobromicum — hydrobromide acid.

According to the international way of formation the names of oxides consist of two words. The first one — the name of the element in Gen. sing. and the second one — a group name of the oxide in Nom. sing.

The pharmacological TE **oxy-** indicates the presence of oxygen: oxydum, *i n* — oxide; peroxydum, *i n* — peroxide; hydroxydum, *i n* — hydroxide; Zinci oxydum (ZnO) — zinc oxide; Cupri oxydum (CuO) — cupric oxide.

According to the international way of formation the names of the salts consist of two nouns: the name of the cation is placed the first in Gen. sing. and the name of the anion is given in Nom. sing. and takes the second place. The names of the ethers are made up in the same way.

For example, Methylii salicylas — methylsalicylate; Adrenalini hydrochloridum — hydrochloride adrenaline.

The names of the salts anions are formed from the base of the Latin name of the corresponding acid with the help of suffixes **-as**, **-is**, **-idum**. The names of the salt anions of oxygen-free acids are nouns of the neuter gender of II declension and the salt anions of oxygenous acids are nouns of the neuter gender of the III declension: sulfas, *atis m* — sulfate; acetas, *atis m* — acetate; nitris, *itis m* — nitrite; sulfis, *itis m* — sulfite. The names of the salts are written in the following way: Kalii sulfas — potassium sulfate; Natrii sulfis — sodium sulfite; Kalii acetas — potassium acetate; Natrii nitris — sodium nitrite; Bromidum, *i n* — bromide; hydrobromidum, *i n* — hydrobromide.

The names of the oxygen-free salts are written in the following way: Kalii bromidum — potassium bromide, Morphini hydrobromidum — morphine hydrobromide.

§ 140. The names of anions

Nom. sing.	Gen. sing.	Gender	Declension	in Latin	Suffix	The name of anion
-as	-atis	m	III	sulfas, <i>atis m</i>	-at	sulfate
-is	-itis	m	III	sulfis, <i>itis m</i>	-it	sulfite
-idum	-idi	n	II	sulfidum, <i>i n</i>	-id	sulfide

§ 141. Exercises

1. Write the Latin name of the acids formed from the following words:

Borum, *i n* — boron; lac, *lactis n* — milk; acetum, *i n* — vinegar; carbo, *onis m* — coal; citrus, *i m* — lemon; nicotinicum, *i n* — nicotine; sulfur, *uris n* — sulfur; formica, *ae f* — ant.

2. Form the names of oxides with the following elements:

Mercury, magnesium, copper (cuprum), zinc, calcium.

3. Write down the names of the salts:

1) codeine phosphate, sodium benzoate, potassium salicylate, calcium gluconate, magnesium sulfate, potassium nitrite, potassium sulfite.

2) ammonium bromide, sodium sulfide, calcium chloride, potassium iodide.

3) hydrochloride (quinine, morphine, ephedrine, papaverin).

4. Name the following medicines in Latin. Put them in Gen. sing.:

Potassium iodide, ferrous lactate, hydrochloride adrenalinum, strychnine nitrate, calcium glucerophosphate, main oleandomycinum phosphate, papaverinum hydrochloride, calcium chloride, lead acetate, lithium carbonate.

§ 142. Self-control

1. Fill in the blanks.

1) The names of the chemical elements in Latin are nouns of ... declension, ... gender with the ending

2) The exceptions are the nouns of the III declension ... and nouns of ... gender.

3) In Latin Hydrogen is ... and mercury is

4) The names of the acids with a large amount of oxygen are expressed by adjectives with the suffix

5) The names of the acids with small amount of oxygen are expressed by adjectives with the suffix

6) In Latin names of the salts, the name of the anion is in ... case and cation in ... case.

7) The Latin names of the salt anions oxygenous acids are formed with the suffix ... and

§ 143. Self-training for the test in the pharmaceutical terminology

1. Analyse the names according to the composition, single out the familiar frequent sections, indicate their meaning:

Neomycinum, Barbamylum, Aethazolum, Phenoxyethylpenicillinum, Phenilli salicylas, Phenazepamum, Platyphyllinum, Cordigitum, Oxytetracyclinum, Sulfacylum, Diazolinum, Hydrocortizonum, Furazolidonum, Morphocyclinum, Sulfadimezinum, Streptomycinum, Synthomycinum, Hydrogenii peroxydum, Aluminii hydroxydum, Theobrominum, Anaesthesinum,

Aminazinum, Aethazolum, Morphinum, Rutinum, Atropinum, Aethylmorphinum, Codeinum, Cordigitum, Dimedrolum, Pharyngosept, Smasmalgon.

2. Write in Latin the names of the medicinal preparations with the section:

-mycin, -cyclin, -phyll, -card-, -pyr, -dol, thyr-, -chol, -sept, -vas, -alg, -myco, -cain, sulfa-, barb-.

3. Write the names of the following medicines in Latin:

Sodium thyosulfate, thiamine bromide, thiamine chloride, ointment of sodium sulfacyllum, sodium sulfite, sodium sulfide, ethasolum in tablets, ointment "Ftorocort", anaesthesine ointment, tablets of lipoic acid.

§ 144. Vocabulary

The names of the acids	
acidum aceticum — acetic acid	acidum acetylsalicylicum — acetyl salicylic acid
acidum ascorbinicum — ascorbinic acid	acidum benzoicum — benzoic acid
acidum carbonicum — carbonic acid	acidum citricum — citric acid
acidum folicum — folic acid	acidum lacticum — lactic acid
acidum lipoicum — lipoic acid	acidum nicotinicum — nicotinic acid
acidum nitricum — nitric acid	acidum phosphoricum — phosphoric acid
acidum salicylicum — salicylic acid	acidum sulfuricum — sulfuric acid
acidum arsenicosum — arsenic acid	acidum hydrochloricum — hydrochloric acid
acidum hydrocyanicum — hydrocyanic acid	acidum hydrosulfuricum — hydrosulfuric acid
The names of the acetate	
acetas, atis <i>m</i> — acetate	benzoas, atis <i>m</i> — benzoate
bromidum, i <i>n</i> — bromide	hydrobromidum, i <i>n</i> — hydrobromide
carbonas, atis <i>m</i> — carbonate	hydrocarbonas, atis <i>m</i> — hydrocarbonate
gluconas, atis <i>m</i> — gluconate	chloridum, i <i>n</i> — chloride
hydrochloridum, i <i>n</i> — hydrochloride	iodidum, i <i>n</i> — iodide
hydroiodidum, i <i>n</i> — hydroiodide	lactas, atis <i>m</i> — lactate
nitris, itis <i>m</i> — nitrite	nitras, atis <i>m</i> — nitrate

The names of the chemical elements

The chemical element	Latin	English
Al	Aluminium, <i>ii n</i>	aluminium
Ag	Argentum, <i>i n</i>	silver (argentum)
As	Arsenicum, <i>i n</i>	arsenic
Au	Aurum <i>i n</i>	gold (aurum)
Br	Bromum, <i>i</i>	bromine
Ba	Barium, <i>i n</i>	barium
Bi	Bismuthum, <i>i n</i>	bismuth
C	Carboneum, <i>i n</i>	carbone
Ca	Calcium, <i>i n</i>	calcium
Cl	Chlorum <i>i n</i>	chlorine
Cu	Cuprum, <i>i n</i>	copper
F	Fluorum, <i>i n</i> (Lat) Phthorum (Gr)	fluorine
Fe	Ferrum, <i>i n</i>	iron (ferrum)
H	Hydrogenium, <i>i n</i>	hydrogen
Hg	Hydrargyrum, <i>i n</i>	mercury (quicksilver, mercurius, hydrargyrum)
I	Iodum, <i>i n</i>	iodine
K	Kalium, <i>i n</i>	potassium
Li	Lithium, <i>i n</i>	Lithium
Mg	Magnesium, <i>i n</i>	magnesium
Mn	Manganum, <i>i n</i>	manganese
N	Nitrogenium, <i>i n</i>	nitrogen
Na	Natrium, <i>i n</i>	sodium (natrium)
O	Oxygenium, <i>i n</i>	oxygen
Pb	Plumbum, <i>i n</i>	lead (plumbum)
Ph	Phosphorus, <i>i m</i>	phosphorus
S	Sulfur, <i>uris n</i>	sulfur
Si	Silicium, <i>i n</i>	silicon
Zn	Zincum, <i>i n</i>	zinc

The names of the salts

Codeini phosphas — codeine phosphate	Cupri citras — copper citrate
Bismuthi subnitras — bismuth nitrate	Hydrargyri cyanidum — mercury cyanide
Kalii arsenis — potassium arsenite	Thiamini chloridum — thiamine chloride

Lesson 23

Self-training for the final control in medical terminology

Aim: 1) *To revise* the material of the lessons

2) *To consolidate* the skills:

a) translate the anatomical terms in the forms of Nom. and Gen. sing. and plur;

b) structural and semantic analysis and formation of the clinical terms with the given meaning;

c) formation of the names of the pharmaceutical terms and their analysis.

§ 145. Exercises to check up whether the aim of the lesson is achieved

1. *Name the dictionary form of every word, translate orally, without dictionary:*

Apex ossis sacri, facies pelvica, ala sacralis, basis ossis sacri, costae spuriae, collum costae, corpus costae, tuberculum musculi scaleni anterioris, tuberositas musculi serrati anterioris, processus coracoideus, tuberculum majus, apertura pelvis superior, diameter obliqua, caput femoris, corpus ossis ilii, sulcus tendinis musculi peronei longi, plica semilunaris, musculus constrictor pharyngis medius, spatium retropharyngeum, lamina muscularis mucosae, papilla duodeni major, ligamentum venosum, porta hepatis, impressio gastrica, ductus hepaticus sinister, ductus cysticus, cornu uteri dextrum, pars ascendens aortae, rami atrioventriculares, bulbus aortae, arteriae posteriores breves, venae anteriores cerebri, sinus sagittalis superior, ganglia spinalia.

2. *Translate into Latin, put the terms in Nom. and Gen. plur.:*

Vesical venous plexus, brachial plexus, carotid canal, cribrate bone, trochlear nerve, superior phrenic artery, small cartilage, spongy bone, costal facets, white matter, cartilage notch femoral canalis, pelvis cavity, hip joint, acromial end, tuberosity of the ulna, root of the lung, nasal part, deep

inguinal ring, middle temporal gyms, spinal pia mater, acute angle, medial wall of the posterior horn, spinal arachnoid mater.

3. *Make morphological analysis of the terms, name the declension, gender, case and number of each word:*

Pars lumbalis diaphragmatis, hiatus aorticus, foramen venae cavae, vagina musculi recti abdominis, musculi intercostales interni, musculi rotatores lumborum, ligamentum arcuatum pubis, articulatio simplex, tuberositas ossis cuboidei, processus lateralis tuberis calcanei, sulcus tendinis musculi peronei longi, os cuniforme intermedium, sulcus sinus sigmoidei, sulcus nervi spinalis, ligamenta intercarpalia interossea, ligamentum capitis fibulae anterioris, musculus flexor digitorum superficialis.

4. *Translate into Latin in written form:*

Adductor magnus muscle, sulcus of the lesser petrosal nerve, left jugular trunk, transverse fissure of the cerebrum, alar ligaments of the odontoid process, trigeminal nerve, superior orbital fissure, surface of the greater trochanter, minor adductor muscle, nuclei of nervi vagi, commisurae of the fornix, spongy bones, fossae of the lacrimal glands, transverse tubercles of the sacrum, lower part, trigeminal impression, orbital parts, reticular formation of the pons, chiasm of tendons.

5. *Translate into English in a written form:*

Musculus flexor digitorum profundus, valvula semilunaris dextra, pericardium serosum, sinus transversus pericardii, rami occipitales, arteria canalis pterygoidei, rami choroidei ventriculi lateralis, sulcus sinus occipitalis, processus palatinus, pars cuneiformis vomeris, lamina arcus vertebrae, incisura vertebralis inferior, arcus posterior atlantis, fovea costalis processus transversi, crista sacralis intermedia, foramina sacralia posteriora, crista capitis costae, facies articularis capitis costae, cornu coccygeum, facies articularis calcanea posterior, ligamentum teres hepatis, ductus pancreaticus accessorius.

6. *Fill in the prefixes in the following terms:*

a) a-, dys-, hyper-, hypo-: 1) stratum ...pigmentosum — a layer deprived of pigment; 2) ...synergia — disturbance of synergia (joined activity); 3) ...aemia — overfull with blood; 4) ...calciaemia — lack of calcium in blood; 5) ...functio — disturbance of the function; 6) ...functio — increased function; 7) ...functio — insufficient function; 8) ...mnesia — disturbance of memory; 9) ...mnesia — loss of memory; 10) ...mnesia — weakening of memory.

b) endo-, peri-, para-: 1) osteum — ...osteum (external); 2) osteum — ...osteum (internal); 3) ...renalis — near the kidneys; 4) ...nephritis — inflammation of the fat around the kidneys; 5) ...metrium — internal wall of the uterus; 6) ...metrium — external wall of the uterus.

7. *Complete the terms:*

1) Science about structure, development and functions of the cells — ...logia. 2) Cell of the bone marrow — myelo... . 3) Difficult swallowing — dys... . 4) Tissue cell — histo... . 5) Red blood cell — ...cytus. 6) Lack of red blood cells — ...penia. 7) White blood cells — ...cytus. 8) Increase of the amount of white blood cells — ...cytosis. 9) Sugar in the blood — ...aemia. 10) Excretion of sugar in the urine — ...uria. 11) Treatment of the patient with transfusion of his own blood — auto... therapia. 12) Penetration of bacteria into the blood — bacteri... . 13) Originated from the blood — ...genes. 14) Treatment with water — ...therapia. 15) Hydrogen — ...genium. 16) Tumour originated from the fat tissue — ...oma. 17) Disturbance of fat metabolism — ...dystrophia. 18) Decrease of the number of lymphocytes in the blood — lympho... . 19) Lack of neutrophils in the blood — neutro... . 20) Eliminating spasms — spasm... . 21) The process of the urine formation — uro... . 22) Forming the urine — uro... . 23) Arrest of hemorrhage — haemo... .

8. *Analyse the composition of the terms, explain the meaning:*

1) Endocrinologus. 2) Pantocrinum. 3) Colitis. 4) Colostomia. 5) Gastro-enterocolitis. 6) Enteritis. 7) Dysentaria. 8) Enteroptosis. 9) Nephroptosis. 10) Gastropptosis. 11) Cholecystopexia. 12) Oesophagotomia. 13) Pelviotomia. 14) Osteotomia. 15) Gastrotomia. 16) Adenectomia. 17) Gastrectomia. 18) Nephrectomia. 19) Monoplegia. 20) Monomorphus. 21) Mononuclearis. 22) Polynuclearis. 23) Polymorphus. 24) Polymyositis. 25) Polyglandularis. 26) Paraplegia. 27) Panophthalmitis. 28) Ophthalmoscopia. 29) Ophthalmologus. 30) Rhinoscopia. 31) Rhinoscleroma. 32) Otorhinolaryngologus. 33) Otosclerosis. 34) Otitis.

9. *Make up terms with the given meaning:*

1) Record of the data of blood investigation. 2) Record of the heart sounds (phone — sound). 3) Instrumental examination of the inner walls of the stomach. 4) Bronchi examination with special instrument. 5) Stop of urination. 6) Operation for fistula application in the stomach. 7) Lowering of the liver, lowering of the large intestine, lowering of the spleen. 8) Operative opening of the thorax, operative opening of the abdominal cavity (lapare — abdomen), opening of the vein. 9) Disturbance of tissue nutrition. 10) Insufficient nutrition of tissues. 11) Insufficient nutrition of tissues and organs. 12) Absence of reactivity. 13) Increased reactivity of the organism. 14) Disturbed reactivity of the organism. 15) Decreased reactivity of the organism. 16) Generated inside the organism (of internal origin). 17) Generated under the influence of outer effects (of external origin). 18) Blood-forming. Absence of tension of tissues and organs. 19) Increase of the arterial pressure. 20) Decrease of the arterial pressure. 21) Overheating of

the organism. 22) Artificial lowering of the body temperature. 23) General weakness. 24) Nervous weakness. 25) Reconstructive operation on the ear. 26) Transplantation of one's own tissues. 27) Paralysis of the nerves innervating the eye muscles. 28) Paralysis of the bladder.

10. Read aloud the names of the medicinal preparations and single out the frequent sections, translate:

Corticotropinum, Promedolum, Cardiovalenum, Antipyrinum, Androfort, Sedalgin, Valosedan, Corvalolum, Valocardinum, Myoseptin, Hydrocortizonum, Urodanum, Heparinum, Pancreatinum, Panangin, Splenin.

HIPPOCRATES

An outstanding ancient Greek physician Hippocrates lived in the era of flourishing of the Greek culture. Plato and Aristotle highly estimated his art. Cicero called him “divus pater medicinae” — “divine father of medicine”.

Hippocrates founded the most flourishing medical school of his age where he collected the best achievements of the Ancient Greek medicine of the classic period. The manuscripts of Hippocrates observations were kept in a famous Alexandria library. Up to our time 72 books came written in Greek and Ion dialect which composed the so-called Hippocratic Collection (“Corpus Hippocraticum”), a complete exposition of his methods.

Hippocratic Collection is an encyclopaedia of the classic period of the history of ancient Greek medicine. First the works of Hippocrates were published in Latin translation in Rome in 1525. Hippocratic Collection also comprises works devoted to the physicians’ ethics. They are “The Oath”, “About Physician”, “The Law”, “Of Proper Behaviour”, “Precepts” and others. The Aphorisms are the most famous of all Hippocratic writings. For centuries this book was regarded as the sum of all medical knowledge.

In ancient Greece the physicians were highly respected, their art was considered to be the occupation of the elite, special people steadfastly keeping the oath that comprised the high principles of the physicians’ ethical conduct.

The Oath (“Jusjurandum”) was first written in III century B. C. and named after Hippocrates.

JUSJURANDUM

Per Apollinem medicum et Asclepium, Hygiamque et Panaceam jure jurando, affirmo et deos deasque omnes testor, me quantum viribus et exscripto spondeo plane observaturum. Praeceptor quidem qui me hanc artem edocuit, parentum loco habiturum.

Victus quoque rationem, quantum facultate et iudico consequi potero, aegris utilem me praescripturum, eosque ab omni noxia et iniuria vindicatorum, neque cuiusquam precibus adductis, alicui medicamentum letale propinabo neque huius rei auctor ero.

Castam et ab omni scelere puram, tum vitam, tum aetatem meam perpetuo praestabo.

Que vero inter curandum, aut etiam medicinam minime faciens, in communi hominum vita, vel videro, vel audivero, quae minime in vulgus efferri oporteat, ea arcana esse ratus, silebo.

Hoc igitur jus jurandum is religiose observavero, ac minime irritum fecero mihi licet cum Summa apud omnes existimatione perpetuo vitam felicem degere liberrimum fructum percipere. Quod si illud violavero et peieravero, contaria mihi constingant.

HIPPOCRATIC OATH

I swear by Apollo, the physician, by Aesculapius, Hygieia and Panacea and by all Gods and Goddesses, having them as witnesses, to carry out honestly, according to my strength and my comprehension this oath and written obligation: to respect my mentor in medicine equally with my parents.

I will plan the patients' regime to their benefit according to my strength and comprehension trying not to cause any harm and unfairness. I won't give anybody asking me a lethal medicine and won't show the way to use it. Immaculate and pure will I live my life and be my art.

In treatment and without it I'll see and hear nothing of the person's life which should not be given away. I'll keep silence about it regarding this a secret. Let me, steadfastly keeping this oath be happy in my life and my art and have a good name among people for ever. Let anybody who violates and takes insincere oath get the opposite of this.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

abdomen, inis *n* — abdomen, belly

abdominalis, e — abdominal

abducens, entis — abducting, abducent

abductor, oris *m* — abductor

ablatio, onis *f* — ablation, removal (by cutting), amputation

abscessus, us *m* — abscess, gathering

absentia, ae *f* — absentia

accessorius, a, um — accessory

accidens, entis — accidental, casual

accumulatio, onis *f* — accumulation

acetabulum, i *n* — acetabulum, cotyloid cavity

acidum, i *n* — acid

acromialis, e — acromial

acromion, i *n* — acromion

acusticus, a, um — acoustic

acutus, a, um — acute

adductor, oris *m* — adductor

adiposus, a, um — adiposis, adiposity

aditus, us *m* — entrance, approach

adjuvans, antis — adjuvant

adrenalinum, i *n* — adrenalin, epinephrine

adultus, a, um — adult

aeger, gra, grum — ill, sick, diseased

aegrotus, a, um — ill, sick

aegrotus, u *m* — patient

aequalis, e — equal

aër, aëris *m* — air

ala, ae *f* — wing

albus, a, um — white

alcohol, olis *n* — alcohol

altus, a, um — high

alveolaris, e — alveolar

amarus, a, um — bitter

amnion, i *n* — amnion

ampulla, ae *f* — ampoule

amputatio, onis *f* — amputation

amylum, i *n* — starch, amyllum

analisis, e — anal

analysis, is *f* — analysis

anamnesis, is *f* — anamnesis

aneurysma, atis *n* — aneurysm

angulus, i *m* — angle, circle

animal, alis *n* — animal

animalis, e — animal

ankylosis, is *f* — ankylosis, joint-stiffening

annus, *i m* — year
anserinus, *a, um* — anserine
anterior, *ius* — anterior
antisepticus, *a, um* — antiseptic, bactericidal
anulus, *i m* — annulus, ring
anus, *i m* — anus
aorta, *ae f* — aorta
apertura, *ae f* — aperture, opening
apertus, *a, um* — open
apex, *icis m* — apex, tip
aponeurosis, *is f* — aponeurosis
appendix, *icis f* — appendage, appendix
aqua, *ae f* — water
aquaeductus, *us m* — aqueduct, conduit, canal
arachnoidea, *ae f* — arachnoidea, arachnoid membrane
arcus, *us m* — arch, bow
area, *ae f* — area, region, district
arrhythmia, *ae f* — arrhythmia
arteria, *ae f* — artery
arteriosus, *a, um* — arterial
articularis, *e* — articular
articulatio, *onis f* — joint, articulation
ascendens, *entis* — ascending
asthma, *atis n* — asthma
atlas, *antis m* — atlas
atrium, *i n* — atrium
atrium cordis — atrium of the heart
auditus, *us m* — hearing, audition
auricula, *ae f* — auricle, pinna, pavilion
auricularis, *e* — auricular
auris, *is f* — ear
auscultatio, *onis f* — auscultation
axillaris, *e* — axillary
axis, *is m* — axis

B
basis, *is f* — basis, base
bene — well
benignus, *a, um* — benign
biceps, *cipitis* — biceps
bicuspidalis, *e* — bicuspid, bicuspidal, bicuspidate
bifurcatio, *onis f* — bifurcation, forking
bilateralis, *e* — bilateral
biliaris, *e* — biliary
bilifer, *era, erum* — bilifer
biliosus, *a, um* — bilious
biventer, *tra, trum* — digastric, biventral
bolus, *i f* — bolus, very large pill
bonus, *a, um* — good
bovinus, *a, um* — bovine
brachium, *i n* — upper arm
bregma, *atis n* — bregma
brevis, *e* — short
bronchialis, *e* — bronchial
bronchitis, *tidis f* — bronchial catarrh
bronchus, *i m* — 1) bronchus 2) bronchus 3) bronchial tube
bucca, *ae f* — cheek
buccalis, *e* — 1) buccal 2) oral
bulbus, *i m* — 1) bulb 2) bulbus
bulbus oculi — eyeball, globe of the eye
bullae, *ae f* — bulla, bleb, blister
bullosus, *a, um* — bullous
bursa, *ae f* — bursa, pouch, sac

C
cadaver, *eris n* — cadaver, corpse, dead body
caecalis, *e* — cecal
caecum, *i n* — caecum, typhlon, blind gut

caecus, a, um — blind
calcaneus, i *m* — heel bone
calcar, aris *n* — spur, spur like process
calcificatio, onis *f* — calcification, calcareous infiltration
calculosus, a, um — calculous
calculus, i *m* — calculus stone, concretion
callosus, a, um — callous, indurated
calor, oris *m* — fever
calvaria, ae *f* — calvaria, skull-cap
calx, calcis *f* — 1) heel 2) lime
calyces renales — calyces (of the kidney)
camera, ae *f* — camera, chamber, cavity
canaliculus, i *m* — canaliculus, small canal, small channel
canalis, is *m* — canal, channel, duct
caninus, a, um — canine
capillaris, e — capillary
capitulum, i *n* — capitulum
capsula, ae *f* — 1) capsulae 2) capsule, wafer, cachet
caput, itis *n* — head
carbo, onis *m* — charcoal, carbon
carcinoma, atis *n* — carcinoma, cancer
carcinomatosus, a, um — canceromatous, cancerous
cardiacus, a, um — cardiac
cardinalis, e — cardinal
caries, ei *f* — caries
caro, carnis *f* — flesh
caroticus, a, um — carotid
carpus, i *m* — wrist, carpus
cartilagineus, a, um — cartilagi-

cartilago, inis *f* — cartilage
casus, us *m* — case
cataracta, ae *f* — cataract
catarrhalis, e — catarrhal
catarrhus, i *m* — catarrh
cauda, ae *f* — tail
caudalis, e — caudal
causa, ae *f* — cause
causalis, e — causal
caverna, ae *f* — cavern, cavity
cavernosus, a, um — cavernous
cavitas, atis *f* — cavity, excavation, hollow, hole, pit
cavum, i *n* — cavity
cavus, a, um — hollow, sunken
celer, eris, ere — rapid, quick, swift
cellula, ae *f* — cell, cellule
cellularis, e — cellular
cementum, i *n* — cement (dental)
centrum, i *n* — centre
ceratus, a, um — cerated
cerebellaris, e — cerebellae
cerebellum, i *n* — cerebellum
cerebralis, e — cerebral
cerebrospinalis, e — cerebrospinal
cerebrum, i *n* — cerebrum
cervicalis, e — cervical
cervix, icis *f* — neck, cervix
charta, ae *f* — waxed paper
chiasma, atis *n* — chiasm
chirurgia, ae *f* — surgery
chirurgicus, a, um — surgical
chirurgus, i *m* — surgeon
chorda, ae *f* — cord
chorion, i *n* — chorion
chronicus, a, um — chronic
cibus, i *m* — food, dish
ciliaris, e — ciliary
cillium, i *n* — cillium, eyelash
cinereus, a, um — grey, ash-colour

cingulum, *i n* — cingulum, girdle
circinatus, *a, um* — circinate, circular, ring-shaped, round
circulatio, *onis f* — circulation
circulatorius, *a, um* — circulatory
circulus, *i m* — circle
circumflexus, *a, um* — circumflexus
citissime (superl.cito) — as fast as possible
cito — quickly
clavicula, *ae f* — clavicle, collarbone
clavicularis, *e* — clavicular
coagulatio, *onis f* — coagulation, clothing
coccygeus, *a, um* — coccygeal
coccyx, *ygis* — coccyx
cochlea, *ae f* — cochlea
cochlear, *aris n* — spoon
cochlearis, *e* — cochlear
colica, *ae f* — colic
colicus, *a, um* — colic
collapsus, *us m* — collapse
collateralis, *e* — collateral, accessory
collum, *i n* — neck
colon, *i n* — colon
color, *oris m* — colour
columna, *ae f* — column
coma, *atis n* — coma
comatosus, *a, um* — comatose
commissura, *ae f* — commissure
commotio, *onis f* — concussion, commotion
communicans, *antis* — communicant
communicatio, *onis f* — communication
communis, *e* — common
compactus, *a, um* — compact,

solid, dense
complexus, *us m* — complex
complicatio, *onis f* — complication
complicatus, *a, um* — complicative
componentum, *i n* — component, constituent
compositus, *a, um* — compose, compound
compressio, *onis f* — compress
concentratus, *a, um* — concentrate
concha, *ae f* — shell
concrementum, *i n* — concreme, concretion, calculus
concretio, *onis f* — concretion
condensatus, *a, um* — condensed
condylus, *i m* — condyle
configuratio, *onis f* — configuration, figure
conjunctiva, *ae f* — conjunctive
constrictio, *onis f* — constriction
constrictor, *oris m* — constrictor
contractio, *onis f* — contraction
contractura, *ae f* — contracture
cor, *cordis n* — heart
cornea, *ae f* — cornea
cornealis, *e* — corneal
cornu, *us n* — horn
corona, *ae f* — crown, wreath
coronarius, *a, um* — coronary
corpus, *oris n* — 1) body 2) mass
corpusculum, *i n* — corpuscle
corrugator, *oris m* — corrugator muscle
cortex, *icis m* — cortex
corticalis, *e* — cortical
costa, *ae f* — rib
costae spuriae — false ribs
costae verae — true ribs

costalis, e — costal
coxa, ae *f* — 1) hip-bone 2) hip-joint 3) hip
cranialis, e — cranial
cranium, i *n* — skull, cranium
crassus, a, um — thick, fat
cremaster, eris *m* — cremaster
cribriformis, e — cribriform, sivelike
cribrosus, a, um — cribriform
cricoideus, a, um — cricoid
crisis, is *f* — crisis, attack
cruciatus, a, um — crossed, cruciate, crucial
cruralis, e — 1) crural 2) femoral
crus, **cruris** *n* — 1) leg 2) crus, pedicle
crusta, ae *f* — crust, scab
cubitus, i *m* — elbow
culex, icis *m* — culex, mosquito, gnat
cura, ae *f* — cure, course of treatment
curabilis, e — curable, remediable
curatio, onis *f* — nursing, care of a patient, cure, treatment
curativus, a, um — curative, healing
cursus, us *m* — course
curvatura, ae *f* — curvature, bending
cuspis, idis *f* — 1) point 2) cusp
cutaneus, a, um — cutaneous
cuticula, ae *f* — cuticle
cutis, is *f* — skin, cutis
cyclus, i *m* — cycle
cysta, ae *f* — cyst
cysticus, a, um — cystic
cystis, is *f* — bladder
cystoma, atis *n* — cystoma

D

debilis, e — feeble, weak, powerless
debilitas, atis *f* — debility, weakness
declive, is *n* — declive, declivis
decoctum, i *n* — decoction
decubitus, us *m* — decubitus, bed-sore
decursus, us *m* — course
deficiens, entis — insufficient, deficient
deformans, antis — deforming
deformatio, onis *f* — deformation, deformity
deltoideus, a, um — deltoid
dementia, ae *f* — dementia, mental feebleness
dens, **dentis** *m* — tooth (plur. teeth)
densus, a, um — dense
dentalis, e — dental
dentatus, a, um — dentate, cogget
dentinum, i *n* — dentine, dentin, ivory
depressivus, a, um — depressive
depressor, is *m* — depressor
depuratus, a, um — depurated, purified
derma, atis *n* — skin, derma
descendens, entis — descending
dexter, tra, trum — right
diabetes, ae *m* — diabetes
diabeticus, a, um — diabetic
diaeta, ae *f* — diet
diagnosis, is *f* — diagnosis
diaphragma, atis *n* — diaphragm, midriff, phren
diaphragmaticus, a, um — diaphragmatic, phrenic
differens, entis — different

difficilis, e — difficult
difformis, e — strained, mis-shapen
diffusicus, a, um — diffuse
digitalis, e — digital
digitatus, a, um — digitate, digitiform
digitus, i *m* — finger, toe
dilatator, oris *m* — dilatator, bougie
dilutus, a, um — diluted
diploë, es *f* — diploe
discus, i *m* — disc, disk
dispar, aris — unequal
distalis, e — distal
diverticulum, i *n* — diverticulum
dolens, entis — painful
dolor, oris *m* — pain, ache
dolorosus, a, um — painful, algetic, algesic
dorsalis, e — dorsal, posterior
dorsum, i *n* — back, dorsum
dosis, is *f* — dose
ductulus, i *m* — ductule
ductus, us *m* — duct
duodenalis, e — duodenal
duodenum, i *n* — duodenum, duodecadactylon
duplex, duplicis — duplex, double
dura mater — dura mater, pachymeninx
durus, a, um — hard

E

ectoderma, atis *n* — ectoderm, ectoblast, epiblast
eczema, atis *n* — eczema
effectus, us *m* — effect, result, action
effusio, onis *f* — effusion

eminentia, ae *f* — eminence
encephalon, i *n* — encephalon, brain
entericus, a, um — enteric
epicardium, i *n* — epicardium
epidemia, ae *f* — epidemic
epiduralis, e — epidural
epigastricus, a, um — epigastric
epiglottis, tidis *f* — epiglottis
epithelium, i *n* — epithelium epithelial cells, epithelial layers.
essentialis, e — essential, necessary
ethmoidalis, e — ethmoidal, ethmoid
exitus, us *m* — 1) exit, outlet 2) death
extensor, oris *m* — extensor
externus, a, um — external, on the outside
extracardialis, e — extracardial
extracellularis, e — extracellular
extractum, i *n* — extract
extraduralis, e — extradural
extrapleuralis, e — extrapleural
extremitas, atis *f* — 1) extremity, limb 2) end
extremus, a, um — extreme

F

facialis, e — facial
facies, ei *f* — 1) face 2) surface
facilis, e — facile, easy
falsus, a, um — false, spurious
fascia, ae *f* — fascia
fauces, ium *f* — fauces
febrilis, e — febrile, feverish
febris, is *f* — febris
fel, fellis *n* — bile
felleus, a, um — biliary

femoralis, e — femoral, crural
femur, oris *n* — 1) femur, thigh-bone 2) thigh
ferula, ae *f* — splint
fibra, ae *f* — fibre, fiber, filament
fibrilla, ae *f* — fibril
fibrillaris, e — fibrillar, fibrillary
fibrinosus, a, um — fibrinous
fibroma, atis *n* — fibroma, fibroid tumor
fibrosus, a, um — fibrous
fibula, ae *f* — fibular, peroneal bone, calf-bone, fibularis
filum, i *n* — filum, thread
fimbria, ae *f* — fimbria, fringe
finis, is *m* — end
fissura, ae *f* — fissure, cleft, crack, rhagade
flavus, a, um — golden yellow, yellow
flexibilis, e — flexible, flexile, pliant, supple
flexio, onis *f* — flexion, bending
flexor, oris *m* — flexor
flexura, ae *f* — flexura, flexion
flos, **floris** *m* — flower
fluidus, a, um — fluid, liquor
focalis, e — focal
focus, i *m* — focus
folium, i *n* — leaf (plur. leaves)
follicularis, e — follicular
folliculus, i *m* — follicle
fontanus, a, um — spring (water), well (water)
fonticulus, i *m* — fontanelle, fontanel
formula, ae *f* — 1) prescription, recipe 2) formula
fornix, icis *m* — fornix, vault, arch
fossa, ae *f* — fossa, depression,

hollow, pit
fossula, ae *f* — fossula, fossete, dimple
fovea, ae *f* — pit, depression, fovea
foveola, ae *f* — minute fovea, minute pit, foveola
fractura, ae *f* — fracture
frenulum, i *n* — frenula, small bridle
frequens, entis — frequent
frons, ntis *f* — forehead
frontalis, e — frontal
fructus, us *m* — fruit
functio, onis *f* — function
functionalis, e — functional
fundus, i *m* — fundus, bottom
funiculus, i *m* — funiculus, cord bundle

G

ganglion, ii *n* — ganglion
gaster, eris(tris) *f* — stomach
gastricus, a, um — gastric, stomachal
genu, us *n* — knee
gingiva, ae *f* — gum
gingivalis, e — gingival
glandula, ae *f* — gland
glandularis, e — glandular
glaucoma, atis *n* — glaucoma
globulus, i *m* — globule (small pill)
2) blood cell, blood corpuscle
globus, i *m* — sphere, ball, globe
glomeriformis, e — glomeriform
glomerulus, i *m* — glomerulus
glomus, eris *n* — glomus
gluteus, a, um — gluteal muscle
granulosus, a, um — granulous, granulated

gravis, e — grave, serious
gustus, us *m* — taste
gutta, ae *f* — drop
gyrus, i *m* — gyrus, convolution

H

habitus, us *m* — habitus
halux, ucis *m* — great toe, halus, halux
hamatus, a, um — hook-like, hooked
hamulus, i *m* — small hook, hooklet, hooklike structure
helix, icis *f* — helix
hemispherium, i *n* — hemisphere, hemispherium
hepar, atis *n* — liver
hepaticus, a, um — hepatic
herba, ae *f* — medicinal herb, simple medicinal plant
hernia, ae *f* — hernia, rupture
hernialis, e — hernial
herpes, etis *m* — herpes
hiatus, us *m* — hiatus, aperture, foramen, opening, gap
hilus, i *m* — hilum, hilus
hirudo, inis *f* — leech
homo, inis *m* — man
horizontalis, e — horizontal
humanus, a, um — human
humeralis, e — humeral
humerus, i *m* — humerus
humor, oris *m* — humor, body fluid
hygiēna, ae *f* — hygiene
hyoideus, a, um — hyoid
hypogastricus, a, um — hypogastric
hypoglossus, a, um — hypoglossal, sublingual

hypophysis, is *f* — hypophysis, pituitary body (pituitary gland)

I

icterus, i *m* — jaundice
ileum, i *n* — ileum
ileus, i *m* — ileus
iliacus, a, um — iliac
imminens, entis — imminent
immissio, onis *f* — immission
impressio, onis *f* — impression, mark
incisio, onis *f* — incision, discision, cut
incisura, ae *f* — incisure, notch
inclinatio, onis *f* — inclination
inclusion, onis *f* — inclusion
incus, udis *f* — anvil
index, icis *m* — index
indicatio, onis *f* — indication
infans, antis *m, f* — infant, baby, child
inferior, ius — inferior, lower
inflammatio, onis *f* — inflammation
infraclavicularis, e — infraclavicular, subclavian, subclavicular
infracostalis, e — infracostal, subcostal
infusum, i *n* — infusion
inguinalis, e — inguinal
inhalatio, onis *f* — inhalation
injectio, onis *f* — injection
insania, ae *f* — insanity, mental disease, mental illness
insufficiētia, ae *f* — insufficiency: 1) inadequacy, failure 2) incompetence
interarticularis, e — interarticular

intercellularis, e — intercellular
intercostalis, e — intercostal
interlobalis, e — interlobal
interlobularis, e — interlobular
intermedius, a, um — intermediary, intermediate
internus, a, um — internal, interior
interosseus, a, um — interosseous, interosseal
interparietalis, e — interparietal
interpositus, a, um — interposed
interruptio, onis *f* — interruption
interscapularis, e — interscapular
intervertebralis, e — intervertebral
intestinalis, e — intestinal, enteric
intestinum, i *n* — intestine, bowel, gut
intimus, a, um — inmost
intoxicatio, onis *f* — intoxication, poisoning
interabdominalis, e — interabdominal
intraarticularis, e — intraarticular
intracardialis, e — intracardial
intracellularis, e — intracellular
intracranialis, e — intracranial
intracutaneus, a, um — intracutaneous, intradermal
intraglutealis, e — intragluteal
intralumbalis, e — intralumbar, endolumbar
intramuralis, e — intramural
intramuscularis, e — intramuscular
intraocularis, e — intraocular
intraperitonealis, e — intraperitoneal
intraspinalis, e — intraspinal
intrathoracicus, a, um — intrathoracic

intrauterinus, a, um — intrauterine
intravascularis, e — intravascular
intravenosus, a, um — intravenous, endovenous
invaginatio, onis *f* — invagination
inversus, a, um — inverted
iris, iridis *f* — iris
ischaemicus, a, um — ischaemic
ischiadicus, a, um — ischiadic

J

jecur, oris *n* — liver
jejunalis, e — jejunal
jejunum, i *n* — jejunum
jugularis, e — jugular
jugulum, i *n* — 1) throat, neck 2) jugular fossa
jugum, i *n* — ridge, eminence
junctura, ae *f* — juncture, junction, articulation, joint
juvenilis, e — juvenile, young
juventus, utis *f* — juvenility

L

labialis, e — labial
labium, i *n* — lip
labyrinthus, i *m* — labyrinthus
labyrinthicus, a, um — labyrinthine
lac, lactis *n* — milk
lacrima, ae *f* — tear
lacrimalis, e — lacrimal
lactans, antis — secreting milk
lacteus, a, um — lacteal, milky
lacuna, ae *f* — small depression
laesio, onis *f* — lesion, hurt
laesus, a, um — hurt, damaged
lamella, ae *f* — lamella
lamina, ae *f* — plate, lamina, layer
larynx, yngis *m* — larynx

lateralis, e — lateral
latens, entis — latent
Latinus, a, um — Latin
latissimus, a, um — broadest
latus, a, um — broad, wide
lens, **lentis** *f* — lens
lentus, a, um — slow
letalis, e — lethal, mortal
levator, oris *m* — elevator (mucle)
liber, a, um — free
libido, inis *f* — libido, sexual desire
lien, enis *m* — spleen
lienalis, e — splenique, lienal
ligamentum, i *n* — ligament
limen, inis *n* — limit, border
limitans, antis — limiting
linea, ae *f* — line
lingua, ae *f* — tongue
lingualis, e — lingual, glossal
lingula, ae *f* — lingula, uvula
liquor, oris *m* — fluid, liquid
lobaris, e — lobar
lobatus, a, um — lobate, lobose
lobularis, e — lobular
lobulus, i *m* — lobule
lobus, i *m* — lobe
localis, e — local
locus, i *m* — place, spot
longitudinalis, e — longitudinal
longus, a, um — long
lumbus, i *m* — loin
lumbalis, e — lumbal
lumbocostalis, e — lumbocostal
lumbosacralis, e — lumbosacral
lux, **lucis** *f* — light
luxatio, onis *f* — dislocation, luxation
lymphaticus, a, um — lymphatic
lympa, ae *f* — lymph
lymphocytus, i *m* — lymphocyte, lymph cell

lymphogenus, a, um — lympho-
agenous
lyticus, a, um — lytic

M

magister, tri *m* — teacher (m)
magistra, ae *f* — teacher (f)
magnus, a, um — great, large
major, jus — greater
malignus, a, um — malignant
malleolus, i *m* — malleolus, hum-
mer
malus, a, um — bad
mamilla, ae *f* — nipple, papilla teat
mamillaris, e — mammillary
mamma, ae *f* — mammary gland
mandibula, ae *f* — lower jaw,
mandible
mandibularis, e — mandibular
manubrium, i *n* — manubrium,
handle
manus, us *f* — hand, arm
marginalis, e — marginal
margo, inis *m* — margin, border,
edge
masculinus, a, um — masculine,
male
masseter, eris *m* — masseter (mus-
cle)
masticatio, onis *f* — chewing
mastoideus, a, um — mastoid,
mastoidal
maternus, a, um — maternal
mater, tris *f* — mother, mater
(dura, pia)
matrix, icis *f* — matrix, basis
maxilla, ae *f* — upper jaw, maxilla
maxiliaris, e — maxillar
maximus, a, um — greatest, maxi-
mal
meatus, us *m* — meatus, passage

medialis, e — middle
medianus, a, um — median
mediastinalis, e — mediastinal
mediastinum, i n — mediastinum
medicamentosus, a, um — medicamentous
medicamentum, i n — drug, medicine, remedy
medicina, ae f — medicine
medicinalis, e — medicinal
medicus, i m — physician, doctor
medius, a, um — middle
medulla, ae f — marrow, medulla
medullaris, e — medullary
medulla oblongata — oblongatal marrow
medulla ossium — bone marrow
medulla spinalis — spinal cord, spinal marrow
membrana, ae f — membrane
membranaceus, a, um — membranous, membranaceous
membranosus, a, um — membranous
membrum, i n — limb, extremity
meningeus, a, um — meningeal
meninx, ngis f — meninx
mentalis, e — mental
mentum, i n — chin
mesenterium, i n — mesentery
mesopharynx, yngis m — oropharynx
metacarpus, i m — metacarpus
metacarpeus a, um — metacarpeous
minimus, a, um — minimal, least, smallest
minor, **minus** — lesser
mixtio, onis f — bland
mixtura, ae f — mixture
mixtus, a, um — mixed

mobilis, e — movable, moving
mobilitas, atis f — mobility
modificatio, onis f — modification
modiolus, i m — modiolus
molares dentes plur. — molar teeth
molaris, e — molar
molestia, ae f — trouble, disorder, complaint
mollis, e — soft
moniliformis, e — monilliform, beaded, rosary-like
monocularis, e — monocular, unilocular
mons, **montis** m — mountain
monstruositas, atis f — monstrosity, teratosis, teratism
monticulus, i m — monticulus
morbus, i m — disease, illness, sickness
moribundus, i m — moribund, dying
mors, **mortis** m — death
mortalitas, atis f — mortality
mortificatio, onis f — mortification
mortuus, a, um — dead
mucosa, ae f — mucous membrane, mucosa
mucosus, a, um — mucous
mucus, i m — mucus, slime
mulier, eris f — woman
multiformis, e — polymorphous, multiform
multiplex, icis — multiple
multus, a, um — 1) numerous, many 2) great, considerable
muscularis, e — muscular
musculatura, ae f — musculature, musculation
musculus, i m — muscle
mutabilis, e — mutable

mutabilitas, atis *f* — mutability
mutatio, onis *f* — mutation, idio-
variation
mutilans, antis — mutilating
mutilatio, onis *f* — mutilation,
maiming
myelencephalon, i *n* — myelen-
cephalon, medullary brain
myelinum, i *n* — myelin, medul-
lary substance
myeloblastus, i *m* — myeloblast
myelocytus, i *m* — myelocyte
myocardium, i *n* — myocardium,
heart muscle
myrtiformis, e — myrtiform

N

naevus, i *m* — nevus, birth-mark,
mother's mark, congenital mark
nanus, i *m* — dwarf nanus
nares, ium *plur.* — naris
naris, is *f* — nostril, naris
nasalis, e — nasal, rhinal
nascens, entis — nascent
nasociliaris, e — nasociliary
nasopharynx, yngis *m* — na-
sopharynx, rhinopharynx, epipha-
rynix
nasopharyngeus, a, um — naso-
pharyngeal
nasus, i *m* — nose
nates, ium *plur.* — buttocks nates
natis, is *f* — nates
nativus, a, um — native
natus, a, um — born
navicularis, e — navicular
necrosis, is *f* — local death,
necrosis
necroticus, a, um — necrotic
neoplasma, atis *n* — neoplasm,
newgrowth, tumour

nervosus, a, um — nervous
nervus, i *m* — nerve
neuralis, e — neural
neuraxon, onis *m* — neuraxone
neuroblastus, i *m* — neuroblast
neurologia, ae *f* — neurology
neuronum, i *n* — neurone
neutralis, e — neutral
neuter, tra, trum — neuter
niger, gra, grum — black
nigricans, antis — blackish
nigrities, ei *f* — blackness, black
pigmentation
nodalis, e — nodal
nodosus, a, um — nodose,
nodous, nodular
nodulus, i *m* — nodule
nodus, i *m* — node, knot
nomen, inis *n* — name
nomenclatura, ae *f* — nomencla-
ture
nonus, a, um — ninth
normalis, e — normal
novem — nine
nucha, ae *f* — back of the neck
nape of the neck
nuclearis, e — nuclear
nucleolus, i *m* — nucleolus
nucleus, i *m* — nucleus
numerus, i *m* — number
nutricius, a, um — nutritious
nutricus, a, um — nourishing,
nutritious
nutritio, onis *f* — nutrition, feeding
nux, **nucis** *f* — nut

O

obesitas, atis *f* — obesity, general
adiposus
obliquus, a, um — oblique, in-
clined

obliterans, *antis* — obliterate
obliteratio, *onis f* — obliteration
obliteratus, *a, um* — obliterate
oblongatus, *a, um* — oblong
obscurus, *a, um* — obscure
observatio, *onis f* — observation
obstructio, *onis f* — obstruction, stoppage
obturatio, *onis f* — obturation
obturatorius, *a, um* — obturating
obturatus, *a, um* — closed
occipitalis, *e* — occipital
occiput, *itis n* — occiput
occlusio, *onis f* — occlusion
occlusivus, *a, um* — occlusive
occultus, *a, um* — occult
octavus, *a, um* (octo) — eight
ocularis, *e* — ocular, visual, ophthalmic
oculomotorius, *a, um* — oculomotor
oculus, *i m* — eye
oesophageus, *a, um* — (o)esophageal
oesophagus, *i m* — (o)esophagus, gullet
olecranon, *i n* — olecranon
oleosus, *a, um* — oily, greasy
olfactorius, *a, um* — olfactory
olfactus, *us m* — smell, olfaction
operatio, *onis f* — operation, surgical procedure
ophthalmicus, *a, um* — ophthalmic, ocular
opticus, *a, um* — optic, optical
opticus, *i m* — optic nerve, nerve of sight
optimalis, *e* — optimal, optimum
optimus, *a, um* — best
oralis, *e* — oral
orbicularis, *e* — orbicular

orbita, *ae f* — orbit, eye-socket, orbital cavity
orbitalis, *e* — orbital
organismus, *i m* — organism
organum, *i n* — organ
orificium, *i n* — orifice, aperture, opening
origo, *inis f* — origin
os, oris *n* — mouth
os, ossis *n* — bone
osculum, *i n* — pore, minute opening
osseus, *a, um* — osseous, bony
ossiculum, *i n* — ossicle, small bone
ostium, *i n* — mouth, entrance, small opening
oticus, *a, um* — otic
ovalis, *e* — oval
ovarialis, *e* — ovarian
ovarium, *i n* — ovary (plur. ovaries)
ovulatio, *onis f* — ovulation
ovulum, *i n* — ovum, ovule, female sexual cell
ovum, *i n* — egg, ovum, egg cell

P

palatinus, *a, um* — palatal, palatine
palatum, *i n* — palate
palmaris, *e* — palmar, palm (of the hand)
palpatio, *onis f* — palpation
palpebra, *ae f* — eyelid
palpebralis, *e* — palpebral
pancreas, *atis n* — pancreas, abdominal salivary gland, stomach
pancreaticus, *a, um* — pancreatic
papilla, *ae f* — papilla
papillaris, *e* — papillary

papilliformis, e — papilliform
papula, ae *f* — papule, pimple
papula
papulosus, a, um — papular
papyraceus, a, um — papyraceous
parasacralis, e — parasacral
parasitarius, a, um — parasitic
parasiticus, a, um — parasitic
parasternalis, e — parasternal
parasympathicus, a, um — para-
sympathetic nervous system, crani-
osacral system
parathyroideus, a, um — para-
thyroid
paraumbilicalis, e — paraumbili-
cal
paraurethralis, e — paraurethral
paravertebralis, e — paravertebral
parencephalon, i *n* — cerebellum
parenchyma, atis *n* — parenchyma
paries, etis *m* — wall
parietalis, e — parietal
paroticus, a, um — parotic, parotid
parotis, idis *f* — parotid gland
pars, partis *f* — part, portion
partialis, e — partial, incomplete
particula, ae *f* — particle
particularis, e — particular
parvus, a, um — small, little
patella, ae *f* — patella, knee-cap,
knee-pan
patellaris, e — patellar, rotular
pater, tris *m* — father
patiens, entis — patient
pecten, inis *n* — comb
pecteniformis, e — pectinate
pectinatus, a, um — pectinate,
combed, comb-shaped
pectineus, a, um — pectinate
pectoralis, e — pectoral

pectus, oris *n* — breast
pedicularis, e — pediculate
pediculatus, a, um — pedicellate,
pedunculate, pediculate, stalked
pediculus, i *m* — pedicle, stalk,
peduncle
pedunculatus, a, um — peduncu-
late
pedunculus, i *m* — peduncle
pellicula, ae *f* — pellicle, thin skin,
thin membrane
pelvicus, a, um — pelvic
pelvinus, a, um — pelvis
pelvis, is *f* — pelvis
pendulum, i *n* — pendulous
penetrans, antis — penetrating
penetratio, onis *f* — penetration,
piercing, entering
penis, is *m* — penis
pepticus, a, um — peptic
percussio, onis *f* — percussion
perforans, antis — perforating
perforatio, onis *f* — 1) perforation
2) terebration
perianalis, e — circumanal, peri-
anal, periproctic
periarterialis, e — periarterial
pericardialis, e — pericardiac,
pericardia
pericardium, i *n* — pericardium
pericementum, i *n* — periodon-
tium
perichondrium, i *n* — perichon-
drium
pericornealis, e — pericorneal
pericranium, i *n* — pericranium
perilympha, ae *f* — perilymph,
perilymph
perimysium, i *n* — perimysium
perinealis, e — perineal
perineum, i *n* — perineum

perineuralis, *e n* — perineural
periodontium, *i n* — periodontium, periodental membrane, alveolodental membrane
periostalis, *e* — periosteal
periosteum, *i n* — periosteum, periosteum
periphēria, *ae f* — periphery
periphericus, *a, um* — peripheric, peripheral
peristaltica, *ae f* — peristalsis
perithelium, *i n* — perithelium
peritonealis, *e* — peritoneal
peritoneum, *i n* — peritoneum
periurethralis, *e* — periurethral
perivascularis, *e* — perivascular
perilingualis, *e* — perilingual
peron(a)eus, *a, um* — peroneal, fibular
perpendicularis, *e* — perpendicular
pes, pedis *m* — foot
petrosus, *a, um* — 1) petrous
2) petrosal
phalangiūcus, *a, um* — phalangeal
phalanx, *angis f* — phalanx
pharyngeus, *a, um* — pharyngeal
pharynx, *yngis m* — pharynx, throat
phrenicus, *a, um* — phrenic nerve
pia mater, *tris f* — pia mater
pigmentatio, *onis f* — pigmentation
pigmentum, *i n* — pigment, colouring matter, dye-stuff
pilaris, *e* — pilar, pilary
pilosus, *a, um* — hairy
pilus, *i m* — hair
pinealis, *e* — pineal
piriformis, *e* — piriform
pisiformis, *e* — pisiform

placenta, *ae f* — placenta, secundines, after-birth
placentalis, *e* — placental
planta, *ae f* — sole (of the foot)
plantaris, *e* — plantar
planus, *a, um* — plane, flat
plasma, *atis n* — plasma
plasmacytus, *i m* — plasma-cell, plasmocyte
platysma, *atis n* — platysma
plenus, *a, um* — full
pleura, *ae f* — pleura, pleural membrane
pleuralis, *e* — pleural
plexiformis, *e* — plexiform
plexus, *us m* — plexus
plica, *ae f* — fold, plait
plicatus, *a, um* — folded, plaited, tucked
pluralis, *e* — plural
pollex, *icis m* — thumb, first finger
pons pontis *m* — bridge
ponticulus, *i m* — ponticulus
poplis, *itis m* — popliteal fossa
popliteus, *a, um* — popliteal
porta *ae f* — gate, hilus
porus, *i m* — pore, foramen, orifice
posterior, *us* — posterior
premlaris, *e* — premolar tooth
prevertebralis, *e* — prevertebral
primus, *a, um* — first
processus, *us m* — process, outgrowth
profundus, *a, um* — profound, deep
promontorium, *i n* — promontory
pronatio, *onis f* — pronation
pronator, *oris m* — pronator (muscle)
proprius, *a, um* — one's own,

proper, personal
prosencephalon, *i n* — fore-brain, prosencephalon
prostata, *ae f* — prostate, prostate gland, prostata
prostaticus, *a, um* — prostatic
protuberantia, *ae f* — protuberance, eminence
proximalis, *e* — proximal
psoas (*atis m*) **musculus** — psoas (muscle)
pterygium, *i n* — pterygium
pterygoideus, *a, um* — pterygoid, wing-shaped, aliform
pubes, *is f* — 1) pubic hair 2) pubic region 3) pubic bone
pubicus, *a, um* — pubic
puer, *eris m* — child, infant, boy
pulmo, *onis m* — lung
pulmonalis, *e* — pulmonary
pulpa, *ae f* — pulp
pulposus, *a, um* — pulpous, pulpy
pulvinar, *aris n* — pulvinar
punctio, *onis f* — puncture, paracentesis
pupilla, *ae f* — pupil, pupilla
pupillaris, *e* — pupillary
putamen, *inis n* — putamen
pyloricus, *a, um* — pyloric
pylorus, *i m* — pylorus, pyloric orifice
pyramidalis, *e* — pyramidal
pyramis, *idis f* — pyramid

Q

quadrangularis, *e* — quadrangular
quadrans, *antis m* — quadrant
quadratus, *a, um* — quadrangle, square
quadriceps, *cipitis* — quadriceps
quadrigeminus, *a, um* — quad-

rigeminal, fourfold
quartus, *a, um* — fourth
quintus, *a, um* — fifth

R

radialis, *e* — radial, radiate
radiatio, *onis f* — radiation
radicularis, *e* — radicular
radius, *i m* — radius
radix, *icis f* — root, radix
ramulus, *i m* — small branch, twig
ramus, *i m* — branch, ramus
raphe, *es f* — rhaps
recessus, *us m* — recess, small hollow, indentation, shallow pocket
rectalis, *e* — rectal
rectouterinus, *a, um* — rectouterine
rectum, *i n* — rectum
reflexio, *onis f* — flexion, bending
regio, *onis f* — region, area
regionaris, *e* — regional
ren, **renis** *m* — kidney
renal, *e* — renal, nephric
resectio, *onis f* — resection
respiratio, *onis f* — respiration, breathing
respiratorius, *a, um* — respiratory
restiformis, *e* — restiform, rope-like
rete, *is n* — network, vascular network
reticularis, *e* — reticular, net-like
reticulum, *i n* — reticulum
retiformis, *e* — retiform
retina, *ae f* — retina, optomeninx
retinaculum, *i n* — retaining band, retinaculum
retroauricularis, *e* — retroauricular
retrobulbaris, *e* — retrobulbar

retrocaecalis, e — retroc(a)ecal
retrocardialis, e — retrocardial
retromandibularis, e — retroman-
 dibular
retronasalis, e — retronasal
retroperitonealis, e — retroperito-
 neal
retropharyngealis, e — retropha-
 ryngeal
retrosternalis, e — retrosternal
retrouterinus, a, um — retroute-
 rine
rhaphe, es *f* — seam, raphe
rhombencephalon, i *n* —
 rhombencephalon, hind-brain
rhomboideus, a, um — rhomboid
rhythmicus, a, um — rhythmic
rhythmus, i *m* — rhythm
rigidus, a, um — rigid, inflexible
rigor, oris *m* — 1) rigidity 2) chill
rima, ae *f* — rima, slit, fissure
rostrum, i *n* — beak, rostrum
rotatio, onis *f* — rotation
rotator, oris *m* — rotator (muscle)
rotundus, a, um — round, rotund
ruber, bra, brum — red
rubor, oris *m* — redness
rudimentarius, a, um — rudimen-
 tary, imperfectly developed, vestigial
rudimentum, i *n* — rudiment
ruga, ae *f* — fold, ridge, crease

S

sacciformis, e — sacciform
saccularis, e — saccular, sacci-
 form
sacculus, i *m* — vestibular saccule
saccus, i *m* — sac
sacer, era, crum — sacred
sacralis, e — sacral
sacrococcygeus, a, um — sacro-

coccygeal
sacrum, i *n* — sacrum, sacred
 bone
sagittalis, e — sagittal
sal, salis *m* — salt
salinus, a, um — saline
saliva, ae *f* — saliva, spittle
salivaris, e — salivary
salivatorius, a, um — salivatory
salus, utis *f* — 1) welfare 2) health
sanguineus, a, um — bloody, san-
 guineous
sanguis, inis *m* — blood, sanguis
sanitas, atis *f* — health
sanus, a, um — healthy
scalenus, i *m* (musculus) — scale-
 nus
scaphoideus, a, um — scaphoid
scapula, ae *f* — shoulder blade,
 scapula
scapularis, e — scapular
scapus, i *m* — shaft, stem
sceletum i *n* — skeleton
scrotalis, e — scrotal
scrotum, i *n* — scrotum
sebaceus, a, um — sebaceous,
 fatty
sebum, i *n* — sebum
secretio, onis *f* — secretion
secretorius, a, um — secretory
secretum, i *n* — secretion
sectio, onis *f* — section, incision
secundarius, a, um — secondary
 subordinate
secundus, a, um — second
segmentum, i *n* — segment, sec-
 tion, part
sella, ae *f* — sella, turkish saddle,
 pituitary fossa
semen, inis *n* — seed, semen,
 seminal fluid, sperm

semilunaris, e — semilunar
septem — seven
septimus, a, um — seventh half-moon-shaped
septulum, i *n* — minute septum
septum, i *n* — septum, dividing wall, partition
serosa, ae *f* — serous membrane, serosa
serosus, a, um — serous
serotinus, a, um — retarded, delayed
serratus, a, um — serrated, toothed, dentate, notched
sex — six
sextus, a, um — sixth
sexus, us *m* — sex
sigmoideus, a, um — sigmoid
simplex, icis — simple, plain ordinary
sinciput, itis *n* — sinciput
singularis, e — singular
sinister, tra, trum — left
sinus, us *m* — sinus, cavity
skeleton, i *n* — skeleton, bony framework
spatium, i *n* — space
sperma, atis *n* — sperm, semen
sphenoidalis, e — sphenoid, wedge-shaped
sphincter, eris *n* — sphincter
spina, ae *f* — spine, spinous process
spinalis, e — spinal, r(h)achidian
spinosus, a, um — spinous, spinose
spiralis, e — spiral, coiled
spongiosus, a, um — spongy
spora, ae *f* — spore
squama, ae *f* — scale, scalelike plate of bone

squamosus, a, um — squamous, scaly, scalelike
stapedius, a, um — stapedius
stapes, edis *m* — stapes, stirrup bone
sternalis, e — sternal
sternocleidomastoideus, a, um — sternocleidomastoideus
sternum, i *n* — breast-bone, sternum
stroma, atis *n* — stroma, framework
styloideus, a, um — styloid, peg-shaped
subarachnoidalis, e — subarachnoid
subcorticalis, e — subcortical
subcostalis, e — subcostal
subcutaneus, a, um — hypodermic, subcutaneuos, subdermic
subcutis, is *f* — subcutaneous tissue
subduralis, e — subdural
sublingualis, e — sublingual
submandibularis, e — submandibular, inframandibular
submaxillaris, e — submaxillar
submucosus, a, um — submucous
suboccipitalis, e — suboccipital
subperitonealis, e — subperitoneal
subphrenicus, a, um — subdiaphragmatic, subphrenic
subscapularis, e — subscapular, infrascapular
subserosus, a, um — subserous
substantia, ae *f* — substance
subtillis, e — subtle, slender
subungualis, e — subungual, hyponychial
sulcatus, a, um — sulcated,

grooved
sulcus, *i m* — sulcus, groove
superciliaris, *e* — superciliary
supercilium, *i n* — supercilium
superfacialis, *e* — superficial
superficies, *ei f* — superficies
superior, *us* — superior, higher
supinatio, *onis f* — supination
supinator, *oris m* — supinator
supraclavicularis, *e* — supraclavicular
supramalleolaris, *e* — supramalleolar
supramarginalis, *e* — supramarginal
supraorbitalis, *e* — supraorbital
suprapatellaris, *e* — suprapatellar
suprapubicus, *a, um* — suprapubic
suprarenalis, *e* — suprarenal, adrenal
suprascapularis, *e* — suprascapular
supraspinalis, *e* — supraspinous, supraspinal
supravaginalis, *e* — supravaginal
supremus, *a, um* — highest
sustentaculum, *i n* — sustentaculum, support
sutura, *ae f* — suture
sympathicus, *a, um* — sympathetic
symphysis, *is f* — symphysis
systema, *atis n* — system
systole, *es f* — systole

T

talocruralis, *e* — talocrural
talus, *i m* — talus, ankle-bone, astragalus

tarsalis, *e* — tarsal
tarsus, *i m* — 1) tarsus, instep
2) tarse (cartilage)
tegmen, *inis n* — tegmen, roof, cover
tegmentum, *i n* — tegmentum
tela, *ae f* — web-like structure, tela, tissue
telencephalon, *i n* — end-brain, telencephalon
temporalis, *e* — temporal
tendineus, *a, um* — tendinous
tendo, *inis m* — tendon, sinew tensor
tenuis, *e* — slender, delicate, slim
teres, *etis* — round and long
terminalis, *e* — terminal, final
terminus, *i m* — term
testicularis, *e* — testicular
tertius, *a, um* — third
testis, *is m* — testicle, testis
thalamencephalon, *i n* — thalamencephalon
thalamus, *i m* — thalamus, optic thalamus
thenar, *aris n* — thenar, thenar eminence, radial palm, ball of the thumb
thoracalis, *e* — thoracal
thoracicus, *a, um* — thoracic
thorax, *acis m* — chest, thorax
thymicus, *a, um* — thymic
thymus, *i m* — thymus, thymus gland
thyreoideus, *a, um* — thyroid
tibia, *ae f* — tibia, shin-bone
tibialis, *e* — tibial
tonsilla, *ae f* — tonsil
tonsillar, *e* — tonsillar, amygdaline

trachea, *ae f* — trachea, windpipe
trachealis, *e* — tracheal
tractus, *us m* — tract, bundle, path, canal
tragus, *i m* — tragus
transcorticalis, *e* — transcortical
transversalis, *e* — transversal
transversus, *a, um* — transverse
triangularis, *e* — triangular
triangulum, *i n* — trigonum
triceps, *ipitis* — triceps (muscle)
trigeminus, *a, um* — trigeminal
trigonum, *i n* — triangle, trigone
triplex, *icis* — triple
trochanter, *eris m* — trochanter
trochantericus, *a, um* — trochanterian, trochanteric
trochlea, *ae f* — trochlea, pulley
trochlearis, *e* — trochlear
trochoideus, *a, um* — trochoid, pulley-shaped, revolving, rotating
truncus, *i m* — torso, trunk
tuba, *ae f* — tube
tubarius, *a, um* — tubal
tuber, *eris n* — tuber, knob
tuberculum, *i n* — tubercle
tuberositas, *atis f* — tuberosity, tubercle
tuberosus, *a, um* — tuberous, knobby, lumpy
tubularis, *e* — tubular
tubulosus, *a, um* — tubulose
tubulus, *i m* — tubule, small tube
tubus, *i m* — tube, canal
tumor, *oris m* — tumo(u)r, swelling
tunica, *ae f* — coat, tunic, membrane
tympanicus, *a, um* — tympanic, tympanal
tympanium, *i n* — tympanum

U

ulcus, *eris n* — ulcer, sore
ulna, *ae f* — ulna, elbow bone
ulnaris, *e* — ulnar, cubital
ultimus, *a, um* — ultimate
umbilicalis, *e* — umbilical
umbilicus, *a, um* — umbilicus navel, omphalus
unciformis, *e* — unciform, hook-shaped
ungualis, *e* — unguial, unguinal
unguis, *is m* — nail
unicellularis, *e* — unicellular, single-shaped
unilateralis, *e* — unilateral
unus, *a, um* — one
ureter, *eris m* — ureter
uretericus, *a, um* — ureteric, ureteral
urethra, *ae f* — urethra
urethralis, *e* — urethral
urina, *ae f* — urine
urinarius, *a, um* — urinary
urogenitalis, *e* — urogenital, genitourinary
uterinus, *a, um* — uterine
uterus, *i m* — uterus, womb
utricularis, *e* — utricular
utriculus, *i m* — utricle
uvula, *ae f* — uvula

V

vagina, *ae f* — vagina, sheath
vaginalis, *e* — vaginal
vagus, *i m* — vagus nerve, pneumogastric nerve, 10th cranial nerve
vallecula, *ae f* — vallecula, depression
vallum, *i n* — vallum, wall
valva, *ae f* — valve

valvula, *ae f* — valve, valvule, small valve
valvularis, *e* — valvular
varioliformis, *e* — varioliform
vas, *vasis n* — vessel
vascularis, *e* — vascular
vasculum, *i n* — small vessel
vegetativus, *a, um* — vegetative
velum, *i n* — vellum, veil
vena, *ae f* — vein
venosus, *a, um* — venous, venose
venter, *tris m* — abdomen, belly
ventralis, *e* — ventral, abdominal
ventricularis, *e* — ventricular
ventriculus, *i m* — 1) stomach
2) ventricle
venula, *ae f* — venule, minute vein
vermiformis, *e* — vermiform, vermicular, worm-shaped
vermis, *is m* — vermis
vertebra, *ae f* — vertebra
vertebralis, *e* — vertebral
vertex, *icis m* — 1) vertex, crown of the head 2) top, highest point

verus, *a, um* — true
vesica, *ae f* — bladder
vesicalis, *e* — vesical
vesicorectalis, *e* — vesicorectal
vesicovaginalis, *e* — vesicovaginal, vaginovesical
vesicula, *ae f* — vesicle
vesicularis, *e* — vesicular
vesiculosus, *a, um* — vesiculose
vestibularis, *e* — vestibular, vestibulate
vestibulum, *i n* — vestibule
villus, *i m* — villus
virgo, *inis f* — virgin
viscera, *um n/plur.* — viscera
visceralis, *e* — visceral, splanchnic
viscus, *eris n* — viscera
vita, *ae f* — life
vitreus, *a, um* — vitreous, glassy
vomer, *eris m* — vomer

Z

zygoma, *atis n* — zygoma
zygomaticus, *a, um* — zygomatic

A

abdomen — abdomen, inis *n*; venter, tris *m*

abdominal — abdominalis, *e*; ventralis, *e*

abducting, abducent — abducens, entis

abduction — abductio, onis *f*

abductor (muscle) — abductor, oris *m*

aberrant — aberrans, antis

aberration — aberratio, onis *f*

abscess — abscessus, us *m*

absorption — absorptio, onis *f*

accessory — accessorius, a, um

acetabulum — acetabulum, *i n*

acoustic — acusticus, a, um

acromion — acromion, *i n*

acromioclavicular — acromioclavicularis, *e*

acromiothoracic — acromiothoracicus, a um

action — effectus, us *m*

acute — acutus, a, um

adduction — adductio, onis *f*

adductor — adductor, oris *m*

adenoid, adeniform — adenoideus, a, um

adenoma — adenoma, atis *n*

adipose — adiposus, a, um

adrenal — adrenalis, *e*; suprarenalis, *e*

adsorption — adsorptio, onis *f*

advancing — progrediens, entis

afferent — afferens, entis

age, old — senilitas, atis *f*

air — aër, aëris *m*

alar — alaris, *e*

alary — alaris, *e*

alate — alatus, a, um

alcohol — alcohol, lis *m*; spiritus, us *m*

alcoholic — spirituosus, a, um

albuginea — albuginea, ae *f* (tunica)

alveolar — alveolaris, *e*

alveolus — alveolus, *i m*

ampulla — ampulla, ae *f*

amygdaline — tonsillaris, *e*

amylum — amylum, *i n*

anal — analis, *e*

anatomic, anatomical — anatomicus, a, um

anatomy — anatomia, ae *f*

angle — angulus, *i m*

angular — angularis, *e*

animal — animal, alis *n*

ankle — malleolus, *i m*

annular — annularis, e
annulate — annulatus, a, um
anomalous — anomalis, e
anomaly — anomalia, ae *f*
anococcygeal — anococcygeus, a, um
anterior — anterior, ius
anhelix — anhelix, icis *f*
antitragus — antitragus, i *m*
antrum — antrum, i *n*
anus — anus, i *m*
anvil — incus, udis *f*
aorta — aorta, ae *f*
aortic — aorticus, a, um
aperture — apertura, ae *f*
apex — apex, icis *m*
apical — apicalis, e
apophysis — apophysis, is *f*
aponeurosis — aponeurosis, is *f*
apparatus — apparatus, us *m*
appendix — appendix, icis *f*
arachnoid — arachnoideus, a, um
arbor — arbor, oris *f*
arch — arcus, us *m*
arcuate — arcuatus, a, um
area — area, ae *f*
arterial — arteriosus, a, um
artery — arteria, ae *f*
arthroidal — arthroideus, a, um
articular — articularis, e
articulation — articulatio, onis *f*
ascending — ascendens, entis
asthma — asthma, atis *n*
astragalus — talus, i *m*
asystole — asystolia, ae *f*
atlas — atlas, antis *m*
atrioventricular — atrioventricularis, e
atrium — atrium, ii *n*
auditory — auditivus, a, um
auricle — auricula, ae *f*

auricular — auricularis, e
auriculotemporal — auriculotemporalis, e
axillary — axillaris, e
axis — axis, i *m*

B

baby — infans, antis *m*
back — dorsum, i *n*
~ of the foot — dorsum pedis
~ of the hand — dorsum manus
~ of the neck — nucha, ae *f*
backbone — columna vertebralis
bactericidal — bactericidus, a, um
bacteriology — bacteriologia, ae *f*
bad — malus, a *m*
basal — basalis, e
base — basis, is *f*
basilar (basis) — basalis, e
basis — basis, is *f*
beak — rostrum, i *n*
beat — ictus, us *m*
beating — pulsans, antis
bechic — pectoralis, e
belly — abdomen, inis *n*; venter, tris *m*
bend — flexura, ae *f*
bending — curvatura, ae *f*
benign, benignant — benignus, a, um
best — optimus, a, um
biceps — biceps, cipitis
bifurcation — bifurcatio, onis *f*
bilateral — bilateralis, e
bile — fel, fellis *n*
biliary — filiaris, e; felleus, a, um
bilifer — bilifer, era, erum
bilious — biliosus, a, um
biogenesis — biogenesis, is *f*
biology — biologia, ae *f*

biopsy — biopsia, *ae f*
birth — partus, *us m*
bite — morsus, *i m*
bitter — amarus, *a, um*
biventral — biventer, *tra, trum*
black — niger, *gra, grum*
bladder — vesica, *ae f*; cystis, *is f*
~ urinary — vesica urinaria
bland — blandus, *a, um*
blastoma — blastoma, *atis n*
bled — bulla, *ae f*
blind — caecus, *a, um*
born — natus, *a, um*
bottom — fundus, *i m*
bow — arcus, *us m*
bowed — arcuatus, *a, um*
bowel — intestinum, *i n*
brachial — brachialis, *e*
brain — encephalon, *i n*
brain pan — cranium, *i n*
branch — ramus, *i m*
branch small — ramulus, *i m*
branching — arborescens, *entis*
breaking — ruptura, *ae f*
breast — mamma, *ae f*
breathing — respiratio, *onis f*
bridge — pons, *pontis m*
broad — latus, *a, um*
bronchial — bronchialis, *e*
bronchium — bronchus, *i m*
bronchus — bronchus, *i m*

C

cachet — capsula, *ae f*
cadaver — cadaver, *eris n*
c(a)ecal — caecalis, *e*
c(a)ecum — caecum, *i n*
calcaneum, calcaneus — calcaneus, *i m*
calculous — calculosus, *a, um*
calculus — calculus, *i m*

calf (of the leg) — sura, *ae f*
callosity — callositas, *atis f*
callus — callositas, *atis f*
calvaria — calvaria, *ae f*
calyces (of the kidney) — calyces renales
camera — camera, *ae f*
canal — canalis, *is m*;
aqueductus, *us*
canaliculus — canaliculus, *i m*
cancer — carcinoma, *atis n*
cancerogenic — cancerogenes, *is*
cancerous — carcinomatosus, *a, um*
cap, duodenal — bulbus duodeni
~ knee — patella, *ae f*
~ skull — calvaria, *ae f*
capillary — capillaris, *e*
capillary (blood-vessel) — vas capillar
capitulum — capitulum, *i n*
capsule — capsula, *ae f*
caput — caput, *itis n*
carbon — carbo, *onis n*
carcinogen — cancerogenes, *is*
carcinoma — carcinoma, *atis n*
cardiac — cardiacus, *a, um*
cardinal — cardinalis, *e*
cardiologist — cardiologus, *i m*
cardiology — cardiologia, *ae f*
cardiovascular — cardiovascularis, *e*
carotid — caroticus, *a, um*; arteria carotis
carpus — carpus, *i m*
cartilage — cartilago, *inis f*
cartilaginous — cartilagineus, *a, um*
case — casus, *us m*
casual — accidens, *entis*
cataract — cataracta, *ae f*

catarrh — catarrhus, *i m*
catarrhal — catarrhalis, *e*
cauda — cauda, *ae f*
caudal — caudalis, *e*
caudate — caudatus, *a, um*
causal — causalis, *e*
causa — causa, *ae f*
cavern — caverna, *ae f*
cavernous — cavernosus, *a, um*
cavity — cavum, *i n*
cell — cellula, *ae f*
cellular — cellularis, *e*
cellule — cellula, *ae f*
cement — cementum, *i n*
central — medianus *a, um*
centre, center — centrum, *i n*
cephalic — cephalicus, *a, um*
cerated — ceratus, *a, um*
cerebellar — cerebellaris, *e*
cerebellum — cerebellum, *i n*
cerebral — cerebralis, *e*
cerebrospinal — cerebrospinalis, *e*
cerebrum — cerebrum, *i n*
cervical — cervicalis, *e*
cervix — cervix, *icis f*
chalk — calx, *calcis f*
chamber — camera, *ae f*
channel — canalis, *is m*;
meatus, *us m*
charcoal — carbo, *onis f*
cheek — bucca, *ae f*
chest — thorax, *acis m*
chiasm — chiasma, *ae f*
chief — princeps, *cipitis*
childhood — infanda, *ae f*
chin — mentum, *i n*
chink — rima, *ae f*
chirurgian — chirurgus, *i m*
chirurgery — chirurgia, *ae f*
chirurgical — chirurgicus, *a, um*

cholecyst — vesica fellea
chondroma — chondroma, *atis n*
chronic — chronicus, *a, um*
ciliary — ciliaris, *e*
cilium — cilium, *ii n*
cingulum — cingulum, *i n*
circle — circulus, *i m*; anulus, *i m*
circular — anularis, *e*;
clavicle — clavicula, *ae f*
clavicular — clavicularis, *e*
clavus — clavus, *i m*
claw — unguis, *is m*
clear — lucidus, *a, um*
cleft — crena, *ae f*; fissura, *ae f*;
rima, *ae f*
closed — obturatus, *a, um*
coat — tunica, *ae f*, indumentum,
i n
coccygeal — coccygeus, *a, um*
coccyx — os coccygeum
cochlea — cochlea, *ae f*
cochlear — cochlearis, *e*
cogged — dentatus, *a, um*; limbo-
sus, *a, um*
collateral — collateralis, *e*
colic — colicus, *a, um*
colon — colon, *i n*
~ ascending — colon ascendens
~ descending — colon descendens
~ pelvic or sigmoid — colon sig-
moideum
~ transverse — colon transversum
color, colo(u)r — color, *oris m*
column — columna, *ae f*
~ of the spinal cord — funiculus
medullae spinalis
~ anterior white — funiculus ante-
rior
~ lateral white — funiculus
lateralis

~ posterior white — funiculus posterior

~ spinal (dorsal, vertebral) — columna vertebralis

coma — coma, atis *n*

comatose — comatosus, a, um

comb — pecten, inis *n*

commissure — commissura, ae *f*

common — communis, e

communicant — communicans, antis

compact — compactus, a, um

complete — absolutus, a, um

complex — complexus, a, um

complicated — complicatus, a, um

composed — compositus, a, um

concave — concavus, a, um

concha — concha, ae *f*

condyle — condylus, i *m*

condyloid — condiloideus, a, um

conjunctiva — conjunctiva, ae *f*

constrictor — constrictor, oris *m*

coracoid — coracoideus, a, um

cord — chorda, ae *f*; funiculus, i *m*

corn — clavus, i *m*

cornea — cornea, ae *f*

corneal — cornealis, e

coronary — coronarius, a, um

corporal, corporeal — somaticus, a, um

corpse — cadaver, eris *n*

corpus — corpus, oris *n*

corpuscle — corpusculum, i *n*

cortex — cortex, icis *m*

cortical — corticalis, e

costal — costalis, e

cough — tussis, is *f*

~ dry — tussis sicca

~ moist — tussis humida

cover — operculum, i *n*

covering — indumentum, i *n*; tegmen, inis *n*

crack — fissura, ae *f*; rima, ae *f*

cranial — cranial is, e

cranium — cranium, i *n*

crest — crista, ae *f*

crisis — crisis, is *f*

crown — corona, ae *f*

~ of the head — vertex, icis *m*

~ of the tooth — corona dentis

crucial, cruciate — cruciatus, a, um

crural — cruralis, e, femoralis, e

crus — crus, cruris *n*

crust — crusta, ae *f*

cubital — cubitalis, e; ulnaris, e

cured — sanatus, a, um

curvature — curvatura, ae *f*

cusp — cuspis, idis *f*

cutaneous — cutaneus, a, um

cuticle — cuticula, ae *f*

cutis — cutis, is *f*

cyst — cystis, is *f*

cystic — cysticus, a, um

cystoma — cystoma, atis *n*

D

damp — humidus, a, um

dartos — tunica dartos

dead — mortuus, a, um

deaf — surdus, a, um

death — mors, mortis *f*

deciduous — deciduus, a, um

deep — profundus, a, um

deferent — deferens, entis

delayed — serotinus, a, um

delicate — tenuis, e

delivery — partus, us *m*

deltoid — deltoideus, a, um

dense — compactus, a, um; densus, a, um

dental — dentalis, e
dentate — dentatus, a, um; serratus, a, um
dentin, dentine — dentinum, i *n*
depressor — depressor, oris *m*
depurated — depuratus, a, um
derma — derma, atis *n*
dermatologist — dermatologus, i *m*
descending — descendens, entis
diameter — diametrum, i *n*
diaphragm — diaphragma, atis *n*
diencephalon — diencephalon, i *n*
diet — diaeta, ae *f*
different — differens, entis; varius, a, um
difficult — difficilis, e
diffuse — diffusus, a, um
digital — digitalis, e
digitate, digitiform — digitatus, a, um
digitus — digitus, i *m*
dilator — dilatator, oris *m*
diluted — dilutus, a, um
diminished — diminutus, a, um
dimple — fossula, ae *f*
diploe — diploë, ës *f*
disc — discus, i *m*
disease — morbus, i *m*; malum, i *n*
diseased — aeger, gra, grum
distal — distalis, e
district — area, ae *f*
diverse — varius, a, um
diverticulum — diverticulum, i *n*
doctor — medicus, i *m*
dodecadactylon — duodenum, i *n*
dominant — dominans, antis
dorsal — dorsalis, e
dorsoventral — dorsoventralis, e
dorsum — dorsum, i *n*
dose — dosis, is *f*

drop — gutta, ae *f*
drug — medicamentum, i *n*
drumear — cavum tympani
drumhead — membrana tympani
dry — siccus, a, um
duct — ductus; us *m*
ductulus — ductulus, i *m*
dumb — mutus, a, um
duodenal — duodenalis, e
duodenum — duodenum, i *n*
duplex — duplex, icis
dura mater — dura mater

E

ear — auris, is *f*
easy — facilis, e
edema — (o)edema, atis *n*
edge — limbus, i *m*; limen, inis *m*; margo, inis *m*
effect — effectus, us *m*
effective — activus, a, um
efferent — efferens, entis
egg — ovum, i *n*
elbow — cubitus, i *m*
elevator — levator, oris *m*
embryo — embryo, onis *m*
eminence — eminentia, ae *f*;
jugum, i *n*
~ frontal — tuber frontale
~ thenar — thenar, aris *n*
enamel — substantia adamantina
encephalon — encephalon, i *n*
end — extremitas, atis *f*; finis, is *m*;
terminus, i *m*
endoderm — entoderma, atis *n*
endolumbal — intralumbalis, e
endovenous — intravenosus, a, um
enteric — entericus, a, um; intestinalis, e
entrance — aditus, us *m*; introitus, us *m*; ostium, i *n*

epicardium — epicardium, *i n*
epicondyle — epicondylus, *i m*
epidermis, epiderma — epidermis, *is f*
epigastrium — regio epigastrica
epiglottis — epiglottis, *tidis f*
epipharynx — cavum pharyngonasale
epithalamus — epithalamus, *i m*
epithelial — epithelialis, *e*
epoophoron — epoophoron, *i n*
erector — erector, *oris m*
errant — migrans, *antis*
erythroblast — erythroblastus, *i m*
erythrocyte — erythrocytus, *i m*
essential — essentialis, *e*
ethmoid, ethmoidal — ethmoidalis, *e*
expiration — expiratio, *onis f*
extensor — extensor, *oris m*
external — externus, *a, um*
extracardialis — extracardialis, *e*
extracellular — extracellularis, *e*
extradural — extraduralis, *e*
extramural — extramuralis, *e*
extrapericardial — extrapericardialis, *e*
extraperitoneal — extraperitonealis, *e*
extrapleural — extrapleuralis, *e*
extrapyramidal — extrapyramidalis, *e*
extrauterine — extrauterinus, *a, um*
extreme — extremus, *a, um*
extremity — extremitas, *atis f; membrum, i n*
eye — oculus, *i m*
eyeball — bulbus oculi
eyebrow — supercilium, *i n*
eyelash — cilium, *i n*
eyelid — palpebra, *ae f*

F
face — facies, *ei f*
facial — facialis, *e*
facile — facilis, *e*
false — falsus, *a, um; spurius, a, um*
fascia — fascia, *ae f*
fasciculus — fasciculus, *i m*
fat — corpulentus, *a, um; crassus, a, um*
fat — adeps, *itis (m, f)*
fatal — letalis, *e*
fatty — adiposus, *a, um*
fauses — fauses, *ium f*
febrile — febrilis, *e*
feeling — sensus, *us m*
fel — fel, *fellis n*
female — femininus, *a, um*
feminine — femininus, *a, um*
femoral — femoralis, *e; cruralis, e*
femur — femur, *oris n*
fiber, fibre — fibra, *ae f*
fibrillar, fibrillary — fibrillaris, *e; filamentosus, a, um*
fibrous — fibrosus, *a, um*
fibula — fibula, *ae f*
fibular — fibularis, *e; peroneus, a, um*
final — terminalis, *e*
fine — subtilis, *e*
finger — digitus, *i m*
~ first — pollex, *icis m*
~ little (fifth) — digitus minimus manus
~ middle (third) — digitus medius
~ pointing (second) — index, *icis m*
firm — solidus, *a, um; durus, a, um*
first — primus, *a, um*
fissure — fissura, *ae f; hiatus, us m; rima, ae f*

fistula — fistula, ae *f*
flat — planus, a, um
flexion — flexio, onis *f*, flexura, ae *f*
flexor — flexor, oris *m*
flexure — flexura, ae *f*
flower — flos, oris *m*
fluid — fluidus, a, um; liquidus, a, um
fluid — liquor, oris *m*; fluidum, *i n*
focal — focalis, e
focus — focus, *i m*
fold — plica, ae *f*; ruga, ae *f*
folded — plicatus, a, um
follicle — folliculus, *i m*
fontanel, fontanelle, fonticulus — fonticulus, *i m*
foot — pes, pedis *m*
foramen — foramen, inis *n*; hiatus, us *m*, porus, *i m*
forearm — antebrachium, *i n*
forefinger — index, icis *m*
forehead — frons, ntis *m*
foreign — heterogenes, *is*
fork — perineum, *i n*
fornix — fornix, icis *m*
fossa — fossa, ae *f*
fossula — fossula, ae *f*
foundation — basis, is *f*
fovea — fovea, ae *f*
foveola — foveola, ae *f*
fracture — fractura, ae *f*
framework — stroma, atis *n*
~ bony — skeleton, *i n*
frenulum — frenulum, *i n*
frequent — frequens, entis
fruit — fructus, us *m*
function — functio, onis *f*
fundus — fundus, *i m*
fungus — fungus, *i m*
funiculus — funiculus, *i m*

furrow — sulcus, *i m*
furrowed — sulcatus, a, um
fusiform — fusiformis, e

G

gall — fell, fellis *n*
gallbladder — vesica fellea
gallstone — calculus felleus; calculus biliaris
ganglioma — ganglioma, atis *n*
ganglion — ganglion, *i n*
ganglionic — ganglionaris, e
gap — hiatus, us *m*
gastric — gastricus, a, um
gastrocardiac — gastrocardialis, e
gastrocolic — gastrocolicus, a, um
gastrogenic — gastrogenes, *is*
gastrointestinal — gastrointestina-
lis, e
gate — porta, ae *f*
gathering — abscessus, us *m*
general — generalis, e
genial — mentalis, e
geniculum — geniculum, *i n*
genital — genitalis, e
girdle — cingulum, *i n*
glabella, glabellum — glabella, ae *f*
gland — glandula, ae *f*
~ adrenal — glandula suprarenalis
~ carotid — glomus caroticum
~ epinephric — glandula supra-
renalis
~ lacrimal — glandula lacrimalis
~ lymph (lymphatic) — nodus
lymphaticus
~ mammary — glandula mammaria
~ parotid — glandula parotis
~ prostate — prostata, ae *f*

~ sublingual — glandula sublingualis
 ~ submaxillary — glandula submandibularis
 ~ suprarenal — glandula suprarenalis
 ~ thymus — thymus, *i m*
 ~ thyroid — glandula thyreoidea
glandular — glandularis, *e*
glass — vitrum, *i n*
glassy — vitreus, *a, um*
globe — globus, *i m*
 ~ of the eye — bulbus oculi
glomerulus, glomerule — glomerulus, *i m*
glomus — glomus, *eris n*
glossal — lingualis, *e*
glottus — glottis, *tidis f*
gluteal — glutealis, *e*
good — bonus, *a, um*
grain — granum, *i n*
granular — granularis, *e*
granulated — granulosus, *a, um*
granule — granulum, *i n*
granulous — granulosus, *a, um*
grave — gravis, *e*
gray, grey — cinereus, *a, um*
greasy — oleosus, *a, um*
great — magnus, *a, um*; multus, *a, um*
grinder — dens molaris
gripe — colica, *ae f*
groin — regio inguinalis
grooved — cubcatus, *a, um*
groove — sulcus, *i m*
gullet — oesophagus, *i m*
gum — gingiva, *ae f*
gut — intestinum, *i n*
 ~ blind — caecum, *i n*
gutter — semicanalis, *is m*
gyrus — gyrus, *i m*

H

habitus — habitus, *us m*
hair — crinis, *is m*; pilus, *i m*
halfmoon-shaped — lunatus, *a, um*; semilunaris, *e*
hallux, hallus — hallux, *ucis m*
hand — manus, *us f*
hard — durus, *a, um*
hardened — induratus, *a, um*
head — caput, *itis n*
healing — curativus, *a, um*
health — salus, *utis f*; sanitas, *atis f*
healthy — sanus, *a, um*
heart — cor, *cordis n*
heat — calor, *oris m*
heel — calx, *calcis f*
helix — helix, *icis f*
hemisphere, hemisphaerium — hemispherium, *i n*
hepatic — hepaticus, *a, um*
herb — herba, *ae f*
hernia — hernia, *ae f*
hernial — hernialis, *e*
hiatus — hiatus, *us m*
higher — superior, *ius*
hilus — hilus, *i m*; porta, *ae f*
hip — coxa, *ae f*
hole — foramen, *inis n*
hollow — cavus, *a, um*
hollow — cavitas, *atis f*; fossa, *ae f*; sinus, *us m*
hooklet — hamulus, *i n*
horn — cornu, *us n*
horned — cornutus, *a, um*
human — humanus, *a, um*
humeral — humeralis, *e*
humerus — humerus, *i m*
humor — humor, *oris m*
hypodermic, hypodermatic — subcutaneous, *a, um*

hypogastric — hypogastricus, a, um
hypogastrium — regio hypogastrica
hypoglossal — hypoglossus, a, um
hypothalamus — hypothalamus, i *m*

I

iatrogeny — iatrogenia, ae *f*
icteric — ictericus, a, um
icterus — icterus, i *m*
idiopathic — idiopathicus, a, um; essentialis, e
ileum — ileum, i *n*
ileus — ileus, i *m*
iliac — iliacus, a, um
ilium — os ilium
ill — aeger, gra, grum; aegrotus, a, um
illness — malum, i *n*; morbus, i *m*
immobile, immovable — immobilis, e
immune — immunis, e
impression — impressio, onis *f*
impure — impurus, a, um
inborn — innatus, a, um
incision — discisio, onis *f*; incisio, onis *f*; sectio, onis *f*
incisor — dens incisivus
incisure — incisura, ae *f*
inclined — obliquus, a, um; obstipus, a, um
incomplete — incompletus, a, um
incus — incus, udis *f*
indentation — recessus, us *m*
index — index, icis *m*
indicator — indicator, oris *m*
indurated — induratus, a, um; scleroticus, a, um; callosus, a, um
infancy — infantia, ae *f*

infant — infans, antis *m/f*; puer, i *m*
infantile — infantilis, e
inferior — inferior, ius
infraclavicular — infraclavicularis, e
infracostal — infracostalis, e
inframaxillary — inframaxillaris, e
infraorbital — infraorbitalis, e
infrapatellar — infrapatellaris, e
infrascapular — infrascapularis, e
inguinal — inguinalis, e
inhalation — aspiratio, onis *f*; inhalatio, onis *f*; inspiratio, onis *f*
inion — inion, i *n*
innate — innatus, a, um
inspiration — inspiratio, onis *f*
instep — tarsus, i *m*
integument — integumentum, i *n*
interarticular — interarticularis, e
interbrain — diencephalon, i *n*
intercellular — intercellularis, e
intercostal — intercostalis, e
interior — interior, ius; internus, a, um
interlobar — interlobaris, e
interlobular — interlobularis, e
intermediary, intermediate — intermedius, a, um
internal — internus, a, um
interosseal, interosseous — interosseus, a, um
interparietal — interparietalis, e
interscapular — interscapularis, e
intervertebral — intervertebralis, e
intestinal — intestinalis, e
intestine — intestinum, i *n*
~ large — intestinum crassum
~ small — intestinum tenue
intraabdominal — intraabdominalis, e
intraarticular — intraarticularis, e

intracardiac, intracardial — intracardialis, e
intracellular — intracellularis, e
intracranial — intracranialis, e
intracutaneous — intracutaneus, a, um
intra-dermal, intra-dermic — intracutaneus, a, um
intragluteal — intraglutealis, e
intra-lumbar — intralumbalis, e
intra-mural — intramuralis, e
intra-muscular — intramuscularis, e
intra-ocular — intraocularis, e
intra-peritoneal — intraperitonealis, e
intra-spinal, intra-rhachidian — intraspinalis, e
intra-thoracic — intrathoracicalis, e; intrathoracicus, a, um
intra-uterine — intrauterinus, a, um
intra-vascular — intravascularis, e
intra-venous — intravenosus, a, um
iodine — iodum, i *n*
iris — iris, iridis *f*
isch(a)emic — ischaemicus, a, um
ischiatric, ischiadic — ischiadicus, a, um
ischium — os ischii
isthmus — isthmus, i *m*
ivory — dentinum, i *n*

J

jaundice — icterus, i *m*
jaw, lower — mandibula, ae *f*
~ upper — maxilla, ae *f*
jejunal — jejunalis, e
jejunum — jejunum, i *n*
joint — articulatio, onis *f*; junctura, ae *f*
~ ankle — articulatio talocruralis, e

~ elbow — articulatio cubiti
~ false — pseudoarthrosis, is *f*
~ hip — articulatio coxae; coxa, ae *f*
~ knee — articulatio genus
~ mortise — articulatio talocruralis, e
~ shoulder — articulatio humeri
jugular — jugularis, e
juice — succus, i *m*
~ duodenal — succus duodenalis, e
~ gastric — succus gastricus
~ intestinal — succus intestinalis
junction, juncture — junctura, ae *f*
juvenile — juvenilis, e

K

keratitis — keratitis, tidis *f*
keratoglobes — keratoglobus, i *m*
kidney — ren, is *m*
~ movable (wandering) — ren mobilis
knee — genu, us *n*
~ pan — patella, ae *f*
knob — tuber, is *n*; umbo, onis *m*
knobby — tuberosus, a, um
knot — nodus, i *m*
kyphosis — kyphosis, is *f*

L

labial — labialis, e
labium — labium, i *n*
labrum — labrum, i *n*
labyrinth — labyrinthus, i *m*
lacerated — lacerus, a, um
lacrimal, lacrymal — lacrimalis, e
lacteal — lacteus, a, um
lactic — lacticus, a, um
lactiferous — lactifer, a, um
lacunar — lacunaris, e

lamella — lamella, *ae f*
lamellar — lamellatus, a, um
lamina — lamina, *ae f*
lard — adeps, *ipis m*
large — major, us
laryngeal — laryngeus, a, um
laryngologist — laryngologus, *i m*
laryngology — laryngologia, *ae f*
larynx — larynx, *yngis m*
late — taedus, a, um
lateral — lateralis, e
laterate — lateralis, e
layer — stratum, *i n*
leaf — folium, *i n*
least — minimus, a, um
left — sinister, tra, trum
leg — crus, *cruris n*
lens — lens, *lentis f*
lenticonus — lenticonus, *i m*
lenticular — lenticularis, e,
lentiformis, e
lesser — minor, us
leucocyte, leukocyte — leucocytus, *i m*
levator — levator, *oris m*
lid (eye lid) — palpebra, *ae f*
lienal — lienalis, e
life — vita, *ae f*
ligament — ligamentum, *i n*
ligamentous — ligamentosus, a, um
light — levis, e
limb — 1) extremitas, *atis f*
2) membrum, *i n*
limen — limen, *inis n*
limited — circumscriptus, a um
limiting — limitans, *ntis f*
line — linea, *ae f*
linear — linearis, e
lingual — lingualis, e
lingula — lingula, *ae f*
lip — labium, *i n*

liquid — fluidus, a, um; liquidus, a, um
liquor — liquor, *oris n*
little — minor, us; parvus, a, um
liver — hepar, *atis n*
living — vivus, a, um
lobar — lobaris, e
lobate — lobatus, a, um
lobe — lobus, *i m*
lobed — lobatus, a, um
lobose — lobatus, a, um
lobular — lobularis, e
lobulate — lobulatus, a, um
lobule — lobulus, *i m*
local — localis, e
locomotor — locomotorius, a, um
ocular, oculated — ocularis, e
loins — lumbus, *i m*
long — longus, a, um
longitudinal — longitudinal, is, e
lower — inferior, us
lumbar — lumbalis, e
lumbrical — lumbricalis, e
lumen — lumen, *inis n*
lunar — lunaris, e
lung — pulmo, *onis m*
lunula — lunula, *ae f*
lungs — pulmones, um (*m*)
lymph — lympa, *ae f*
lymphatic — lymphaticus, a, um
lymphocapillary — lymphocapillaris, e
lymphocyte — lymphocytus, *i m*
lymphoid — adenoideus, a, um
lymphonode — nodus lymphaticus
lymphatic — lymphaticus, a, um
M
maceration — maceratio, *onis f*

macula, ae *f* — macula, ae *f*
maculate — maculatus, a, um;
maculosus, a, um
macule — macula, ae *f*
maculous — maculosus, a, um
male — masculinus, a, um
malformation — malformatio,
onis *f*
malleolar — malleolaris, e
malleolus — malleolus, i *m*
mammilla — papilla mammae
mammillary — mammillaris, e
mandibula, mandible — mandibu-
la, ae *f*
mandibular — mandibularis, e
manubrium — manubrium, i *n*
margin — margo, inis *m*
marginal — marginal is, e
marrow — medulla, ae *f*
mass — massa, ae *f*
maxilla — maxilla, ae *f*
masculine — masculinus, a, um
masseter — masseter, eris *m*
mesenteric — mesentericus, a, um
mesenteriolum — mesenteriolum,
i *n*
mesentery — mesenterium, i *n*
medial — medianus, a, um
metabolism — metabolismus, i *m*
metacarpal — metacarpalis, e
metacarpus — metacarpus, i *m*
metatarsal — metatarsalis, e
metatarsus — metatarsus, i *m*
metathalamus — metathalamus,
i *m*
metencephalon — meten-
cephalon, i *n*
microbe — microorganismus, i *m*
microcyte — microcytus, i *m*
midbrain — mesencephalon, i *n*
middle — medianus, a, um,

medius, a, um
midriff — diaphragma, atis *n*
milk — lac, lactis *n*
milky — lacteus, a, um
minimal — minimus, a, um
mitral — mitralis, e
mixed — mixtus, a, um
modiolus — modiolus, i *m*
molar — molaris, e
molecular — molecularis, e
monocular — monocularis, e
monocyte — monocytus, i *m*
mononuclear — mononuclearis, e
mons — mons, montis *f*
mortal — mortalis, letalis, e
mouth — 1) os, oris *n* 2) ostium,
i *n*
movable, moving — mobilis, e
mucosa — mucosa, ae *f*
mucous — mucosus, a, um
multiform — polymorphus, a, um
multilobular — multilobularis, e
multioctular — multioctularis, e
multinuclear — polynuclearis, e
multiple — multiplex, icis
muscle — musculus, i *m*
muscular — muscularis, e
musclation, musculature —
musculatura, ae *f*
musculocutaneous — musculocu-
taneus, a, um
musculophrenic — musculo-
phrenicus, a, um
musculotubal — musculotubalis, e
myelocyte — myelocytus, i *m*
mylohyoid — mylohyoideus,
a, um
myocardium — myocardium, i *n*
myoid — myoideus, a, um
myometrium — myometrium, i *n*
myrtiform — myrtiformis, e

N

nevus — naevus, *i n*
nail — unguis, *is f*
name — nomen, *inis n*
nape, nape of the neck — nucha, *ae f*
naris — naris, *is f*
narrow — angustus, *a, um*
nasal — nasalis, *e*
nasociliary — nasociliaris, *e*
nasolacrimal — nasolacrimalis, *e*
nasopharynx — cavum pharyngo-nasale
navicular — navicularis, *e*;
scaphoideus, *a, um*
neck — cervix, *icis f*, collum, *i n*
nephric — renalis, *e*
nephron — nephron, *i n*
nerve — nervus, *i m*
nervous — nervosus, *a, um*
network — rete, *is n*
neural — neural *is, e*
neuron, neurone — neuronum, *i n*
neurovascular — neurovascularis, *e*
neutral — neutralis, *e*
newborn — neonatus, *a, um*
niche — recessus, *us m*
nipple — papilla mammae
nodal — nodalis, *e*
node — nodus, *i m*
nodose, odous — nodosus, *a, um*
nodosity — nodositas, *atis f*
nodular — nodularis, *e*
nodulus — nodulus, *i m*; tuberculum, *i n*
narrowing — strictura, *ae f*
normocyte — normocytus, *i m*
nose — nasus, *i m*
nostril — naris, *is f*
notch — incisura, *ae f*
notched — dentatus, *a, um, serra-*

tus, a, um
nuclear — nuclearis, *e*
nucleiform — nucleiformis, *e*
nucleolus — nucleolus, *i m*
nucleus — nucleus, *i m*
nutrient — nutriens, *ntis*
nutritious — nutritius, *a, um*

O

oblique — obliquus, *a, um*
obliquity — obliquitas, *atis f*
obliterant — obliterans, *ntis*
obliteration — obliterationo, *onis f*
oblongated, oblongatal — oblongatus, *a, um*
obturator — obturatorius, *a, um*
occipital — occipitalis, *e*
occipitomastoid — occipitomas-toideus, *a, um*
occipitotemporal — occipitotemporalis, *e*
occiput — occiput, *itis n*
occlusive — occlusivus, *a, um*
ocular — ophthalmicus, *a, um*
oculomotor — oculomotorius, *a, um*
(o)esophageal — oesophageus, *a, um*
(o)esophagus — oesophagus, *i m*
olecranon — olecranon, *i n*
olfactory — olfactorius, *a, um*
omental — omentalis, *e*
omentum — omentum, *i n*
omohyoid — omohyoideus, *a, um*
omphalus — umbilicus, *i m*
onyx — unguis, *is f*
oophoron — ovarium, *i n*
opening — apertura, *ae f*; hiatus, *us m*,
ophthalmic — ophthalmicus, *a, um*; ocularis, *e*

opposite — contrarius, a, um
optic, optical — opticus, a, um
optomeninx — retina, ae *f*
oral — oralis, e; buccalis, e
orbicular — orbicularis, e
orbit — orbita, ae *f*
orbital — orbitalis, e
organ — organum, i *n*
organic — organicus, a, um
organism — organismus, i *m*
orifice — apertura, ae *f*; orificium, i *n*; porus, i *m*
origin — origo, inis *f*; genesis, is *f*
oropharynx — mesopharynx, yngis *f*
osseous — osseus, a, um
ossicle — ossiculum, i *n*
osteoid — osteoideus, a, um
otic — oticus, a, um
outgrowth — processus, us *m*
ovarial — ovarialis, e
ovary — ovarium, i *n*
oviduct — tuba uterina
ovulation — ovulatio, onis *f*
ovum, ovule — ovulum, i *n*, ovum, i *n*

P

pachymeninx — dura mater
pain — dolor, oris *m*
palate — palatum, i *n*
palatine, palatal — palatinus, a, um
pale, pallid — pallidus, a, um
pallium — pallium, i *n*
palm — palma manus
palmar — palmaris, e
palpation — palpatio, onis *f*
palpebral — palpebralis, e
pancreas — pancreas, atis *n*
pancreatic — pancreaticus, a, um
papilla — papilla, ae *f*
papillary — papillaris, e
papular — papulosus, a, um
papule — papula, ae *f*
paracolic — paracolicus, a, um
parametrium — parametrium, i *n*
pararectal — pararectalis, e
pararenal — pararenalis, e
parasacral — parasacralis, e
parasternal — parasternalis, e
parathyroid — parathyroideus, a, um
paraurethral — paraurethralis, e
paravaginal — paravaginalis, e
pericementum — pericementum, i *n*
pericerebral — pericerebralis, e
pericorneal — pericornealis, e
pericranium — pericranium, i *n*
perilymph — perilympa, ae *f*
perilymphatic — perilymphaticus, a, um
perimetry — perimetrius, i *n*
perimysium — perimysium, i *n*
perineal — perinealis, e
perineum — perineum, i *n*
perineural — perineuralis, e
perineurium — perineurium, i *n*
periodontium — periodontium, i *n*
periosteal — periostealis, e; periosteum, i *n*
peripheral — periphericus, a, um
periphery — peripheria, ae *f*
periproctic — perianalis, e
peristalsis — peristaltica, ae *f*
peristaltic — peristalticus, a, um
peritoneal — peritonealis, e
peritoneum — peritoneum, i *n*
periurethral — periurethralis, e
perivascular — perivascularis, e
peroneal — fibularis, e, peroneus, a, um

perpendicular — perpendicularis, e
pes — pes, pedis *m*
petrosal, petrous — petrosus, a, um
petrosquamous — petrosquamosus, a, um
phagocyte — phagocytus, *i m*
phalangeal — phalangicus, a, um
phalanx — phalanx, angis *f*
pharyngeal — pharyngeus, a, um
pharyngobasilar — pharyngobasilaris, e
pharynx — pharynx, yngis *f*
phrenic — phrenicus, a, um
piarachnoid — leptomeninges, ium *f* (pl.)
pigment — pigmentum, *i n*
pilar, pilary — pilaris, e
pilomotor — pilomotoris, e
pineal — pinealis, e
pinna — auricula, ae *f*
piriform — piriformis, e
pisiform — pisiformis, e
pit — cavitas, atis *f*; fossa, ae *f*; fovea, ae *f*
place — locus, *i m*
placenta — placenta, ae *f*
plain — simplex, icis
plane — planus, a, um
plantar — plantaris, e
plasma — plasma, atis *n*
plasmocyte — plasmocytus, *i m*
plate — lamina, ae *f*
platysma — platysma, atis *n*
pleomorphic — polymorphicus, a, um
pleura — pleura, ae *f*
pleural — pleuralis, e
plexiform — plexiformis, e
plexus — plexus, us *m*
plica — plica, ae *f*

pneumatic — pneumaticus, a, um
point — cuspis, idis *f*
pons — pons, pontis *f*
ponticulus — ponticulus, *i m*
popliteal — popliteus, a, um
popliteocrural — popliteocruralis, e
pore — porus, *i m*; stroma, atis *n*
porta — porta, ae *f*
portal — portalis, e
portion — pars, partis *f*
postcentral — postcentralis, e
posterior — posterior, us, dorsalis, e
pouch — bursa, ae *f*
pouched — sacciformis, e
precardiac — precordialis, e
precordial — precordialis, e
premolar — premolaris, e
prepatellar — prepatellaris, e
prepuce — praeputium, *i n*
prescalene — prescalenus, a, um
pretracheal — pretrachealis, e
previsceral — previsceralis, e
primary — primarius, a, um
process — processus, us *m*
profound — profundus, a, um
projection — processus, us *m*
promontory — promontorium, *i n*
promyelocyte — promyelocytus, *i m*
pronation — pronatio, onis *f*
pronator (muscle) — pronator, oris *m*
proper — proprius, a, um
prostate — prostata, ae *f*
prostatic — prostaticus, a, um
protoplasm — protoplasma, atis *n*
protuberance — protuberantia, ae *f*
proximal — proximalis, e
psoas (muscle) — psoas, atis *n*
pterygium — pterygium, *i n*

pterygoid — pterygoideus, a, um
pubic — pubicus, a, um
pubis, pubes — pubis, is *f*
pubofemoral — pubofemoralis, e
pulmonary — pulmonalis, e
pulp — pulpa, ae *f*
pulpous, pulpy — pulposus, a, um
pulse — pulsus, i *m*
pulvinar — pulvinar, aris *n*
puncture — punctio, onis *f*
pupil — pupilla, ae *f*
pupil(l)ary — pupillaris, e
pus — pus, puris *n*
putamen — putamen, inis *n*
pyloric — pyloricus, a, um
pylorus — pylorus, i *m*
pyramid — pyramis, idis *f*
pyramidal — pyramidalis, e

Q

quadrangular — quadrangularis, e
quadrate — os quadratum, quadratus
quadriceps — quadriceps, ipitis
quadrigeminal — quadrigeminus, a, um

R

radial, radiate — radialis, e
radical — radicalis, e
radicular — radicularis, e
radiocarpal — radiocarpalis, e
radiohumeral — radiohumeralis, e
radioulnar — radioulnaris, e
radius — radius, i *m*
radix — radix, icis *f*
raiser (muscle) — levator
ramus — ramus, i *m*
raphe — sutura, ae *f*; raphe, es *f*
recess — recessus, us *m*

rectal — rectalis, e
rectouterine — rectouterinus, a, um
rectovesical — rectovesicalis, e
rectum — rectum, i *n*
rectus — rectus, a, um
red — ruber, bra, brum
region — regio, onis *f*
regional — regionalis, e
renal — renalis, e
resection — resectio, onis *f*
respiration — respiratio, onis *f*
respiratory — respiratorius, a, um
restiform — restiformis, e
rete — rete, is *n*
reticular — reticularis, e
reticulocyte — reticulocytus, i *m*
reticulospinal — reticulospinalis, e
reticulum — reticulum, i *n*
retiform — reticularis, e
retina — retina, ae *f*
retinaculum — retinaculum, i *n*
retroc(a)ecal — retrocaecalis, e
retromandibular — retromandibularis, e
retroperitoneal — retroperitonealis, e
retropharyngeal — retropharyngealis, e
retrosternal — retrosternalis, e
retrovisceral — retrovisceralis, e
retrouterine — retrouterinus, a, um
rhinal — nasalis, e
rhinencephalon — rhinencephalon, i *n*
rhinopharynx — cavum pharyngonasale
rhombencephalon — rhombencephalon, i *n*
rhombocephalic — rhombo-

cephalicus, a, um
rhomboid — rhomboideus, a, um
rib — costa, ae *f*
ridge — crista, ae *f*; jugum i *n*
right — dexter, tra, trum
rima — rima, ae *f*
ring — anulus, i *m*
roof — tegmen, inis *n*
root — radix, icis *f*
rotation — rotatio, onis *f*
rotator (muscle) — rotator, oris *m*
rotular — patellaris, e
rotund — rotundus, a, um
round — circularis, e
rubrospinal — rubrospinalis, e

S

sac — bursa, ae *f*; saccus, i *m*
sacciform — sacciformis, e
sac-shaped — sacciformis, e
saccular — saccularis, e
saccule — sacculus, i *m*
sacral — sacralis, e
sacred bone — os sacrum
sacrococcygeal — sacrococcygeus, a, um
sacrolumbar — sacrolumbalis, e
sacrum — os sacrum
saddle — sella, ae *f*
sagittal — sagittalis, e
saliva — saliva, ae *f*
salivary — salivalis, e (salivaris)
salivatory — salivatorius, a, um
salpinx — tuba uterina
sanguis — sanguis, is *m*
sartorius (muscle) — sartorius (musculus)
scale — squama, ae *f*
scalenus — scalenus, a, um (musculus)
scaphoid — scaphoideus, a, um

scapula — scapula, ae *f*
scapular — scapularis, e
scapuloclavicular — scapuloclavicularis, e
sciatic — ischiadicus, a, um
sclera — sclera, ae *f*
scrotal — scrotalis, e
scrotum — scrotum, i *n*
seam — raphe, es *f*
sebaceous — sebaceus, a, um
sebum — sebum, i *n*
second — secundus, a, um
secretion — secretio, onis *f*
section — sectio, onis *f*
segment — segmentum, i *n*
semen — semen, inis *n*; sperma, atis *n*
semicanal — semicanalis, is *m*
semilunar — semilunaris, e; lunatus, a, um
semimembranous — semimembranaceus, a, um
seminal — spermaticus, a, um
semitendinous — semitendineus, a, um
sense — sensus, us *m*
sensory — sensorius, a, um
separation — separation, onis *f*
septulum — septulum, i *n*
septum — septum, i *n*
serosa — serosa, ae *f*
serous — serosus, a, um
serrate(d) — serratus, a, um
sexual — sexualis, e
shank — crus, cruris *n*
sheath — vagina, ae *f*
shell — concha, ae *f*
short — brevis, e
shoulder — brachium, i *n*
shoulder blade — scapula, ae *f*
side — latus, eris *n*

sigmoid — sigmoideus, a, um
sign — signum, i *n*
simple — simplex, icis
sinuous — sinuosus, a, um
site — situs, us *m*
skeleton — skeleton, i *n*
skin — cutis, is *f*
skull — cranium, i *n*
slim — tenuis, e
slime — mucus, i *m*
slit — rima, ae *f*
slow — lentus, a, um
small — parvus, a, um
smaller — minor, us
smallest — minimus, a, um
space — spatium, i *n*
sperm — sperma, atis *n*; semen, inis *n*
spermatic — spermaticus, a, um
sphenoethmoidal — sphenoeethmoidalis, e
sphenofrontal — sphenofrontalis, e
sphenoid — sphenoeideus, a, um
sphenoidoparietal — sphenoidoparietalis, e
sphenomandibular — sphenomandibularis, e
sphenooccipital — sphenooccipitalis, e
sphenopalatine — sphenopalatinus, a, um
sphenopetrosal — sphenopetrosus, a, um
sphincter — sphincter, eris *m*
spinal — spinalis, e
spindle-shaped — fusiformis, e
spine — spina, ae *f*
spinous — spinosus, a, um
spinocerebellar — spinocerebellaris, e
spinothalamic — spinothalamicus,

a, um
spiral — spiralis, e
spittle — saliva, ae *f*
splanchnic — visceralis, e
stylohyoid — stylohyoeideus, a, um
stylomastoid — stylomastoideus, a, um
stylopharyngeal — stylopharyngeus, a, um
subarachnoid — subarachnoidalis, e
subcortical — subcorticalis, e
subcostal — infracostalis, e
subcutaneous — subcutaneus, a, um
subdermic — subcutaneus, a, um
subdural — subduralis, e
sublingual — sublingualis, e; hypoglossus, a, um
submandibular — submandibularis, e
submucous — submucosus, a, um
suboccipital — suboccipitalis, e
subperiosteal — subperiostealis, e
subperitoneal — subperitonealis, e
subphrenic — subphrenicus, a, um
subscapular — subscapularis, e
subserous — subserosus, a, um
substance — substantia, ae *f*; materia, ae *f*
sulcus — sulcus, i *m*
sulcate(d) — sulcatus, a, um
superciliary — superciliaris, e
superficial — superficialis, e
supination — supinatio, onis *f*
supinator — supinator, oris *m*
supraciliary — superciliaris, e
supraclavicular — supraclavicularis, e
supramarginal — supramarginalis, e

supramaxillary — supramaxillaris, e
suprapatellar — suprapatellaris, e
supraorbital — supraorbitalis, e
suprarenal — suprarenalis, e;
adrenalis, e
suprascapular — suprascapularis, e
supraspinous — supraspinalis, e
suprasternal — suprasternalis, e
supratrochlear — supratrochlearis, e
supravaginal — supravaginalis, e
supravesical — supravesicalis, e
supreme — supremus, a, um
surface — facies, ei *f*
suture — sutura, ae *f*
sword-shaped — xiphoideus, a um
sympathetic, sympathic — sympathicus, a, um
symphysis — symphysis, is *f*
synarthrosis — synarthrosis, is *f*
synchondrosis — synchondrosis, is *f*
syndesmosis — syndesmosis, is *f*
synovia — synovia, ae *f*
synovial — synovialis, e
system — systema, atis *n*

T

tail — cauda, ae *f*
tailed — caudatus, a, um
talocrural — talocruralis, e
tarsal — tarsalis, e
tarsometatarsal — tarsometatarsalis, e
tear — lacrima, ae *f*
teat — papilla mammae
tectorial — tectorius, a, um
tegmen — tegmen, inis *n*
tegmentum — tegmentum, i *n*
tegmental — tectorius, a, um

tela — tela, ae *f*
telencephalon — telencephalon, i *n*
temple — regio temporalis
temporal — temporalis, e
temporomandibular — temporo-
mandibularis, e
temporozygomatic — temporozy-
gomaticus, a, um
tendinous — tendineus, a, um
tendon — tendo, inis *m*
tenia — tenia, ae *f*
tensor — tensor, oris *m*
teres — teres, etis
terminal — terminalis, e
testicle — testis, is *f*
testicular — testicularis, e
testospinal — testospinalis, e
thalamus — thalamus, i *m*
thigh — femur, oris *n*
thigh-bone — femur, oris *n*
third — tertius, a, um
thoracic, thoracal — thoracicus,
a, um
thoracodorsal — thoracodorsalis, e
thoracolumbar — thoracolumba-
ris, e
thorax — thorax, acis *m*
thread — filum, i *n*
three — tres, tria
threefold — triplex, icis
threshold — limen, inis *n*
throat — pharynx, ingis *m*
thumb — pollex, icis *m*
thymic — thymicus, a, um
thymus — thymus, i *m*
thyroepiglottic — thyroepiglotti-
cus, a, um
thyrohyoid — thyrohyoideus, a,
um
thyroid — thyreoideus, a, um
tibia — tibia, ae *f*

tibial — tibialis, e
tibiofibular — tibiofibularis, e
tibionavicular — tibionavicularis, e
tip — apex, icis *m*
tissue — tela, ae *f*
toe, great — hallux, ucis *m*
tongue — lingua, ae *f*
tonsil — tonsilla, ae *f*
tonsillar — tonsillaris, e
tooth — dens, dentis *m*
top — vertex, icis *m*
topical — topicalis, e
topographic — topographicus,
a, um
torso — truncus, i *m*
torus — torus, i *m*
trabecula — trabecula, ae *f*
trachea — trachea, ae *f*
tracheal — trachealis, e
tract — tractus, us *m*
tragus — tragus, i *m*
transversal — transversalis, e
transverse — transversus, a, um
triangle — trigonum, i *n*
triangular — triangularis, e;
trigonalis, e; triquetrus, a, um
triceps (muscle) — triceps, ipitis
tricuspid — tricuspidalis, e
trigonal — trigonalis, e
trilateral — trilateralis, e
triple — triplex, icis
triquetrous — triquetrus, a, um
trochanter — trochanter, eris *m*
trochanterian, trochanteric —
trochantericus, a, um
trochlea — trochlea, ae *f*
trochlear — trochlearis, c
trochoid — trochoideus, a, um
trophic — trophicus, a, um
trunk — truncus, i *m*

tubal — tubarius, a, um
tube — tuba, ae *f*
tuber — tuber, eris *n*
tubercle — tuberculum, i *n*
tuberosity — tuberositas, atis *f*
tuberous — tuberosus, a, um
tuboovarian — tuboovarialis, e
tubular — tubularis, e
tubule — tubulus, i *m*
tubulose, tubulous — tubulosus,
a, um
tumo(u)r — tumor, oris *m*
tunic — tunica, ae *f*
turbinate — nasalis, e
twig — ramulus, i *m*
tympanal, tympanic — tympani-
cus, a, um
tympanomastoid — tympanomas-
toideus, a, um
tympanosquamous — tympano-
squamosus, a, um
tympanium — tympanum, i *n*,
auris media
typhlon — caecum, i *n*

U

ulna — ulna, ae *f*
ulnar — ulnaris, e
umbilical — umbilicalis, e
umbilicus — umbilicus, i *m*
unciform — unciformis, e
unicellular — unicellularis, e
unilateral — unilateralis, e
uniaxial — uniaxialis, e
ureter — ureter, eris *m*
ureteric, ureteral — uretericus,
a, um
urethra — urethra, ae *f*
urethral — urethralis, e

urinary — urinarius, a, um
urine — urina, ae *f*
urogenital — urogenitalis, e
uterine — uterinus, a, um
uterovaginal — uterovaginalis, e
uterovesical — uterovesicalis, e
uterus — uterus, i *m*
uvea — uvea, ae *f*
uvula — uvula, ae *f*

V

vagina — vagina, ae *f*
vaginal — vaginalis, e
vagus — vagus, i *m* (nerves)
vallecula — vallecula, ae *f*
vallum — vallum, i *n*
valve — valvula, ae *f*
valvular — valvularis, e
varix — varix, icis *m*
vascular — vascularis, e
vault — fornix, icis *m*
veil — velum, i *n*
vein — vena, ae *f*
veinlet — venula, ae *f*
vegetative — vegetativus,
a, um
velum — velum, i *n*
venous, venose — venosus, a, um
ventral — ventralis, e
ventricle — ventriculus, i *m*
ventricular — ventricularis, e
venule — venula, ae *f*
vermiform, vermicular — vermi-
formis, e
vermis — vermis, is *m*
vertebra — vertebra, ae *f*
vertebral — vertebralis, e
vertex — vertex, icis *m*
vertical — verticalis, e

vesical — vesicalis, e
vesicle — vesicula, ae *f*
vesicorectal — vesicorectalis, e
vesicouterine — vesicouterinus,
a, um
vesicovaginal — vesicovaginalis, e
vessel — vas, vasis *n*
vestibular, vestibulate — vestibularis, e
vestibule — vestibulum, i *n*
vestibulocochlear — vestibulocochlearis, e
vestibulospinal — vestibulospinalis, e
villus — villus, i *m*
visceral — visceralis, e
vision — visio, onis *f*
vitreous — vitreus, a, um
vocal — vocalis, e
voice — vox, vocis *m*
volar — palmaris, e
vomer — vomer, eris *m*
vulva — vulva, ae *f*

W

wall — paries, etis *m*
wedge-shaped — cuneiformis, e;
sphenoidalis, e
white — albus, a, um
wide — latus, a, um
windpipe — trachea, ae *f*
wing — ala, ae *f*
wing-shaped — pterygoideus, a, um
wisdom-tooth — dens serotinus
womb — uterus, i *m*
wrist — carpus, i *m*

X

xiphoid — xiphoideus, a, um

Y

yellow — flavus, a, um

Z

zone — zona, ae *f*; rea, ae *f*

zygomatic — zygomaticus, a, um

zygomaticofacial — zygomatico-facialis, e

zygomaticoorbital — zygomatico-orbitalis, e

zygomaticotemporal — zygomaticotemporalis, e

ABBREVIATIONS

Acc. — accusativus — Accusative Case

Gen. — genetivus — Genetive Case

Nom. — nominativus — Nominative Case

f — femininum — feminine gender

m — masculinum — masculine gender

n — neutrum — neuter gender

plur. — pluralis — plural number

sing. — singularis — singular number

REFERENCIAS

1. *Англо-русский медицинский словарь*. — М. : Рус. язык, 1989. — 603 с.
2. *Болотина А. Ю.* Англо-русский и русско-английский медицинский словарь / А. Ю. Болотина, Е. О. Якушева. — М. : Руссо, 2001. — 542 с.
3. *Закалюжний М. Н.* Латинська мова і основи медичної термінології / М. Н. Закалюжний, Г. Б. Паласюк. — Тернопіль : Укрмедкнига, 2004. — 224 с.
4. *Изучение* клинических терминов в медвузе : (метод. рекомендации для преподавателей и студентов). — О. : ОГМУ, 1991. — 59 с.
5. *Латинська мова : рецептура. Клінічна термінологія* / Г. О. Краковецька та ін. — К. : Здоров'я, 1999. — 356 с.
6. *Латинский язык и основы медицинской терминологии* / под общ. ред. М. Н. Чернявского — Минск : Выш. школа, 1999. — 360 с.
7. *Фомин Б. Н.* *Lingua Latina*: Учебник латинского языка для студентов-историков высшей школы / Б. Н. Фомин ; под ред. проф. Л. Н. Голубенко. — О. : ЧП «Фотоситетика», 2003. — 296 с.
8. *Федотов О. В.* Морфологічний словник медичної термінології / О. В. Федотов, О. М. Очкуренко, К. М. Фенчин. — К. : Вища школа, 1985. — 310 с.
9. *Шевченко Є. М.* Латинська мова і основи медичної термінології : навч. посібник / Є. М. Шевченко. — К. : Вища школа, 1992. — 160 с.

CONTENTS

Preface	5
<i>Introduction.</i> The Latin language as a professional language of a doctor. The term. The scientific notion	6
<i>Lesson 1.</i> The Latin Alphabet. Phonetics. Pronunciation of vowels. Pronunciation of diphthongs and consonants. Pronunciation of letter combinations (§ 1–9)	12
<i>Lesson 2.</i> Duration and brevity of the syllable. The rules of stress (§ 10–15)	21
<i>Lesson 3.</i> Introduction into the anatomical terminology. Notion of the term and the terminology. Parts of speech and grammar categories of words constituting a term. Noun. Grammar categories of the noun, dictionary form, general information of declensions and the base. General rules of defining the gender. Uncoordinated attribute. Structural types of the terms (§ 16–29)	26
<i>Lesson 4.</i> Adjectives. Grammar categories of the adjectives. Dictionary form, 2 groups of adjectives. The 1-st group of adjectives. Coordination with nouns (§ 30–41)	37
<i>Lesson 5.</i> The adjectives of the 2-nd group, their use in the medical terminology. Coordination of the adjectives of the 2-nd group with the nouns of I–V declensions (§ 42–50)	48
<i>Lesson 6.</i> The adjective. The use of degrees of comparison in the anatomical terminology. Declension of adjectives in all degrees of comparison. Exceptions from degrees of comparison. Defective degrees of comparison (§ 51–60)	55

<i>Lesson 7.</i>	Individual preparation for content control on the anatomical terminology (§ 61)	63
<i>Lesson 8.</i>	The Verb. Grammatical categories and dictionary form. The notion about four conjugations and the base (stem). The Present Tense of the Indicative Mood in the Active and Passive Voice (Praesens indicativi activi et passivi). The word order in Latin sentences, the auxiliary verb “esse” — “to be” (§ 62–66)	66
<i>Lesson 9.</i>	Nouns of the I and II declension. Word-building. The most important suffixes of nouns of I–II declensions. Declension of nouns of Greek origin. The translation of the anatomical terms with the nouns of the I and the II declensions (§ 67–77)	71
<i>Lesson 10.</i>	The nouns of the III declension: gender signs and characters of bases. The nouns of the III declension of the masculine gender in the anatomical terminology. Word-building of the nouns of the masculine gender in the III declension (§ 78–85)	76
<i>Lesson 11.</i>	The nouns of the feminine gender of the III declension. The III declension of Greek nouns (§ 86–93)	81
<i>Lesson 12.</i>	The nouns of the neuter gender of the III declension (§ 94–101)	86
<i>Lesson 13.</i>	The nouns of the IV–V declensions in the medical terminology (§ 102–105)	91
<i>Lesson 14.</i>	Individual preparation for the final control on the anatomical terminology (§106–107)	94
<i>Lesson 15.</i>	Word-building by stems. Derived words. Greek-Latin duplicates and single terminological elements. General notion of the clinical terms structure (§ 108–117)	98
<i>Lesson 16.</i>	Word-building in the clinical terminology (continuation). Greek-Latin duplicate designations of organs and tissues (§ 118–120)	103
<i>Lesson 17.</i>	Word-building in the clinical terminology (continuation). Prefixation. Suffixation. Derivatives with prefixes and suffixes (§ 121–122)	106

<i>Lesson 18.</i> Word-building in the clinical terminology (continuation). Greek-Latin pairs naming tissues, organs, secretions, discharge, sex, age (§ 123–126).....	112
<i>Lesson 19.</i> Word-building in the clinical terminology (continuation). Single TE denoting different physical properties, qualities, relations and other signs (§ 127–129)	116
<i>Lesson 20.</i> Self-training for the content control (§ 130–132).....	119
<i>Lesson 21.</i> General notion of pharmaceutical terminology. Nomenclature of the medicinal preparations. Trivial names of the medicinal substances (§ 133–138)	123
<i>Lesson 22.</i> Chemical nomenclature in Latin. The names of the chemical elements, acids, oxides and salts (§ 139–144)	127
<i>Lesson 23.</i> Self-training for the final control in medical terminology (§ 145)	133
Supplement	137
Latin-English vocabulary	139
English-Latin vocabulary	160
Abbreviations	182
Referencies	183

Бібліотека студента-медика

Провідний редактор серії

В. М. Попов

Художнє оформлення серії

О. А. Шамиуріна

Навчальне видання

**Єрьомкіна Галина Генадіївна, Скуратова Тамара Федорівна,
Іващук Наталя Сергіївна, Кравцова Юлія Олегівна**

ЛАТИНСЬКА МОВА ТА ОСНОВИ МЕДИЧНОЇ ТЕРМІНОЛОГІЇ

Практичний курс

Навчальний посібник

Англійською мовою

Провідний редактор ***В. М. Попов***

Редактор ***Р. В. Мерешко***

Художній редактор ***О. А. Шамиуріна***

Технічний редактор ***А. В. Попов***

Коректор ***О. В. Титова***

Поліграфічні роботи ***І. К. Каневський***

Підп. до друку 25.10.2008. Формат 60x84/16.

Папір офсетний. Гарн. Таймс. Друк різнографічний. Ум. друк. арк. 13,55.

Обл.-вид. арк. 20,00. Тираж 500. Зам. 1144.

Видано і надруковано Одеським державним медичним університетом.

65026, Одеса, Валіховський пров., 2.

Свідоцтво ДК № 668 від 13.11.2001.

Латинська мова та основи медичної термінології :
Практичний курс : Навч. посібник / Г. Г. Єрьомкіна, Т. Ф.
Скуратова, Н. С. Іващук, Ю. О. Кравцова. — О. : Одес.
держ. мед. ун-т, 2008. — 188 с. (Б-ка студента-медика). —
Мова англ.

ISBN 978-966-443-008-8

Навчальний посібник створено відповідно до програми з латинської мови та основ медичної термінології для медичних вузів. Спрямований на вивчення основ термінології загальномедичних і клінічних дисциплін, він містить тренувальні вправи для роботи в аудиторії, контрольні питання та зразки завдань для самостійної роботи студентів, а також латинсько-англійський та англо-латинський словники (понад 2600 термінів).

Для англомовних студентів-першокурсників вищих медичних навчальних закладів IV рівня акредитації.

Бібліогр.: 9 назв.

ББК 81.461я73